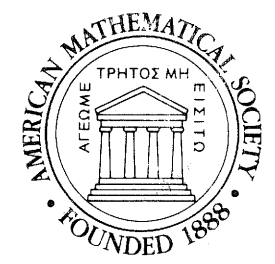


QA1  
.R336  
no. 69

conference board of the mathematical sciences  
regional conference series in mathematics

number **69**



**Frank D. Grosshans  
Gian-Carlo Rota  
Joel A. Stein**

**INVARIANT THEORY  
AND SUPERALGEBRAS**



supported by the national science foundation  
published by the american mathematical society

①  
Conference Board of the Mathematical Sciences  
*REGIONAL CONFERENCE SERIES IN MATHEMATICS*

supported by the  
National Science Foundation

Number 69

**INVARIANT THEORY  
AND SUPERALGEBRAS**

**Frank D. Grosshans  
Gian-Carlo Rota  
Joel A. Stein**



Published for the  
Conference Board of the Mathematical Sciences  
by the  
American Mathematical Society  
Providence, Rhode Island

919771

Expository Lectures  
from the CBMS Regional Conference  
held at West Chester University  
August 19 - 23, 1985

Research supported by National Science Foundation Grant MCS-8104855.  
1980 *Mathematics Subject Classifications* (1985 *Revision*). 15A72, 15A15, 15A75,  
16A24, 20G45.

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Grosshans, Frank D., 1942-  
Invariant theory and superalgebras / Frank D. Grosshans, Gian-Carlo Rota,  
Joel A. Stein  
p. cm. — (Regional conference series in mathematics; no. 69)  
Expository lectures from the CBMS regional conference held at West Chester  
University, Aug. 19-23, 1985.  
Bibliography: p.  
ISBN 0-8218-0719-6 (alk. paper)  
1. Invariants. 2. Algebras, Linear. I. Rota, Gian-Carlo, 1932-  
II. Stein, Joel A., 1944- . III. Title. IV. Title: Superalgebras. V. Series.  
QA1.R33 no. 69 [QA201] 510 s—dc19 [512.944]

**Copying and reprinting.** Individual readers of this publication, and nonprofit libraries acting for them, are permitted to make fair use of the material, such as to copy an article for use in teaching or research. Permission is granted to quote brief passages from this publication in reviews, provided the customary acknowledgment of the source is given.

Republication, systematic copying, or multiple reproduction of any material in this publication (including abstracts) is permitted only under license from the American Mathematical Society. Requests for such permission should be addressed to the Executive Director, American Mathematical Society, P.O. Box 6248, Providence, Rhode Island 02940.

The owner consents to copying beyond that permitted by Sections 107 or 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law, provided that a fee of \$1.00 plus \$.25 per page for each copy be paid directly to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 21 Congress Street, Salem, Massachusetts 01970. When paying this fee please use the code 0160-7642/87 to refer to this publication. This consent does not extend to other kinds of copying, such as copying for general distribution, for advertising or promotion purposes, for creating new collective works, or for resale.

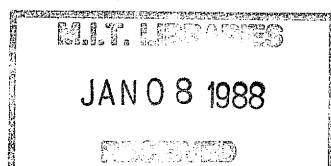
Copyright ©1987 by the American Mathematical Society. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

The American Mathematical Society retains all rights  
except those granted to the United States Government.

The paper used in this book is acid-free and falls within the guidelines  
established to ensure permanence and durability. ⊗

Sciendo



QA1  
.R336  
no. 69

**Contents**

<b>Introduction</b>	v
<b>Synopsis</b>	vii
<b>Notation Guide</b>	xxi
<b>Chapter 1. The Superalgebra Super[A]</b>	
0. Introduction	1
1. Definitions	2
2. Construction of the Superalgebra Super[A]	4
3. Tensor Products	6
4. The Coproduct $\Delta$	7
5. The Coassociative Law	9
<b>Chapter 2. Laplace Pairings</b>	
0. Introduction	13
1. The Fourfold Algebra	15
2. The Laplace Pairing	16
3. Examples	20
4. The Tableau of Two Words	22
<b>Chapter 3. The Standard Basis Theorem</b>	
0. Introduction	25
1. Definitions, Statement of Theorem	26
2. Spanning	29
3. A Bilinear $\mathbb{Z}$ -valued Form	34
4. Gale-Ryser Interpolating Matrices	36
5. Proof of Theorem 8, (iv)	38
<b>Chapter 4. Invariant Theory</b>	
0. Introduction	41
1. Definitions	42
2. The Action of $GL_n(K)$ on Super[L   P]	44
3. The Umbral Linear Functional	47

4. The First Fundamental Theorem	48
5. Covariants	51
6. The Classical Groups	53
<b>Chapter 5. Examples</b>	
1. Skew-Symmetric Tensors	55
2. The Meet	56
3. Covariants	58
4. Examples of Invariants	59
5. Examples of Covariants	61
<b>References</b>	75
<b>Index</b>	79

## Introduction

The present work is intended to develop three main results:

(1) An extension of the standard basis theorem, going back to Doubilet, Rota, and Stein, and eventually to Capelli and Young, to algebras containing positively signed and negatively signed variables, or superalgebras as we call them. Such an extension has required a rethinking of some of the basic concepts of linear algebra, such as "matrix" and "coordinate system," along lines that we believe to be new, and which we hope will lead to an extension to "signed" modules of the entire apparatus of linear algebra. The standard basis theorem, which we prove, is characteristic-free and includes, besides the classical case, straightening algorithms, which apply to permanents as well as to determinants, as well as a mixed generalization of the notion of both determinant and permanent, called the biproduct, which differs from the Berezin determinant.

(2) A rigorous presentation of the symbolic method of invariant theory for symmetric tensors, in characteristic zero. The results here offer no great novelty over the nineteenth century, except rigor.

(3) A new symbolic method (foreshadowed by Weitzenböck) for the representation of invariants of skew-symmetric tensors. Here, the results turn out to be more satisfactory. Symbolic expressions for the invariants of skew-symmetric tensors are more manageable and easier to compute than those for symmetric tensors. In fact, in contrast to symmetric tensors, the "meaning" of the vanishing of an invariant can be more easily gleaned from the symbolic representation, as we show by several examples.

In both instances, the actual invariant is obtained from the symbolic representation by applying an operator which we call the umbral operator. Invariants of symmetric tensors are obtained by applying the umbral operator to certain polynomials in a commutative algebra, whereas invariants of skew-symmetric tensors are obtained by applying the umbral operator to polynomials in an anti-commutative algebra. Thus, the umbral operator can be viewed as mapping an anticommutative algebra into a commutative algebra, and vice versa. It is an instance of a Schur functor.

The umbral operator thus establishes a cryptomorphism between commutative and anticommutative algebras, and can be used to systematically develop anticommutative analogs of concepts of algebraic geometry. This, we believe, may ultimately turn out to be the main byproduct of the present investigation.

In the exposition, we have preferred to use algebras generated by an alphabet over algebras generated by a free module. The results can, however, be recast in a basis-free language: the choice between these two equivalent languages is largely a matter of taste and of the objectives at hand.

## Synopsis

We prove two distinct but closely related results. The first is the extension of the standard basis theorem to superalgebras (defined below). The second is the application of the standard basis theorem to the computation of invariants (and, more generally, of covariants) of symmetric and skew-symmetric tensors. In this synopsis we give an informal description of the main ideas and results which can be read independently of the body of the work and which can be used as a guideline to the text.

We begin by recalling the three fundamental algebraic systems of invariant theory: the symmetric algebra, the divided powers algebra, and the exterior algebra.

(1) Given an alphabet  $A^0$  (that is, a set  $A^0$  whose elements are to be viewed as "variables"), the symmetric algebra  $\text{Sym}(A^0)$  generated by  $A^0$  is the familiar commutative algebra of polynomials in the variables  $A^0$ . The coefficients of these polynomials will be integers, although (here and everywhere below) an arbitrary commutative ring with identity could be taken as the ring of coefficients.

(2) Given an alphabet  $A^-$ , the exterior algebra  $\text{Ext}(A^-)$  is the algebra generated by the variables  $A^-$ , subject to the identities  $ab = -ba$  and  $a^2 = 0$  for  $a, b \in A^-$ . Thus,  $\text{Ext}(A^-)$  is the algebra of "polynomials in anticommutative variables  $A^-$ ." A nonzero monomial in  $\text{Ext}(A^-)$  is a product of a finite sequence of variables

$$a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n, \quad a_i \in A^-,$$

where no two  $a_i$  coincide, and two monomials are related by the familiar "sign law"

$$a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n = (\text{sgn } \sigma) a_{\sigma 1} a_{\sigma 2} \cdots a_{\sigma n}$$

for any permutation  $\sigma$  of the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

Given an alphabet  $A^+$ , the divided powers algebra  $\text{Div}(A^+)$  is the commutative algebra generated by the variables  $a^{(i)}$ , as  $a$  ranges over  $A$  and as  $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ . We set  $a^{(0)} = 1$  and  $a^{(1)} = a$ . The idea is that  $a^{(i)}$  is to satisfy the same identities as  $a^i/i!$ . Thus we impose the identities

$$(3) \quad (*) \quad a^{(i)}a^{(j)} = \binom{i+j}{i} a^{(i+j)}$$

(other identities usually imposed in the definition of the divided power algebra will not be needed, and need not be recalled here).

We wish to develop a suitable notation for the tensor product of these three algebras, for three disjoint alphabets  $A^0$ ,  $A^-$ , and  $A^+$ . The usual notation of tensor products proves unwieldy, and we choose to describe the tensor product by a more direct route, namely, as the monoid algebra of a certain monoid to be presently defined. Thus, after taking the disjoint sum  $A^0 \oplus A^- \oplus A^+ = A$  we consider a monoid  $\text{Mon}[A]$  which is "almost" the free monoid generated by  $A$ . The words in  $\text{Mon}[A]$  shall be products of variables in  $A^0$  and in  $A^-$ , and of the divided powers  $a^{(i)}$  for  $a \in A^+$ . Thus a word appears as a product, e.g.,

$$w = abc^{(i)}de^{(j)}.$$

The identities among these monomials are those that follow from the following commutation relations  $ab = ba$  in all cases except when both  $a$  and  $b$  belong to  $A^-$ , in which case we set  $ab = -ba$ . Thus, if  $a, b \in A^-$ , if  $c, d \in A^0$ , and if  $e, f \in A^+$  then we have, for example,

$$(**) \quad dac^2e^{(3)}bf^{(5)} = -c^2bf^{(5)}ae^{(3)}d.$$

The product of two words is juxtaposition, except that products of divided powers are to be simplified by (\*). Thus, for example,  $(ae)(be) = 2abe^{(2)}$ . The length of a monomial is computed taking into account the fact that the divided power  $a^{(i)}$  is to be considered of length  $i$ . Thus, the monomial (\*\*) is of length (= degree) 13. With these conventions, the monoid algebra of  $\text{Mon}[A]$  is well defined by taking formal linear combinations and products. We call it the *superalgebra*  $\text{Super}[A]$  generated by the *signed alphabet*  $A$ . The variables of the alphabet  $A$  will be designated as neutral, negatively signed, and positively signed, respectively.

The superalgebra  $\text{Super}[A]$ , although a worthwhile subject of investigation, is not the immediate object of the present study. We need to define a more complex structure, which will be called the *fourfold algebra*. To this end, we consider two signed alphabets  $L = L^+ \oplus L^-$  and  $P = P^+ \oplus P^-$ , called *proper*, because neither has neutral elements. Their elements will be called *letters* and *places*, respectively. From these two alphabets we define a third signed alphabet  $[L | P]$ , the *letterplace alphabet*. The definition of  $[L | P]$  is fundamental. The elements of  $[L | P]$  will be pairs  $(x | \alpha)$ , where  $x \in L$  and  $\alpha \in P$ ; these pairs will

sometimes be called letterplaces (the geometric motivation for this term will be given shortly). Their signatures are determined by the following rules:

- (i)  $(x | \alpha) \in [L | P]^+$  if  $x \in L^+$  and  $\alpha \in P^+$ ,
- (ii)  $(x | \alpha) \in [L | P]^0$  if  $x \in L^-$  and  $\alpha \in P^-$ ,
- (iii)  $(x | \alpha) \in [L | P]^-$  otherwise.

The Superalgebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  is called the *fourfold algebra*. Our objective will be to show that the fourfold algebra is the suitable machinery to develop the invariant theory of symmetric and skew-symmetric tensors, and, as a byproduct, to formulate a "signed" generalization of linear algebra.

All theorems of linear and multilinear algebras can be viewed as consequences of the Laplace expansions for determinants. This sweeping assertion is in part made precise by the second fundamental theorem of invariant theory, and it will serve as motivation for the generalization of some such theorem to superalgebras that we shall develop below.

In ordinary linear algebra, one deals with vectors (here denoted by letters) and coordinates (also known as linear functionals, here denoted by places). The  $\alpha$ th coordinate of a vector  $x$  is a *scalar* (here denoted by a neutral variable). Thus, vectors must be taken as negatively signed letters, and coordinates must be taken as negatively signed places. The value of a vector  $x$  at the coordinate  $\alpha$  is denoted by  $(x | \alpha)$  and is a scalar (that is, a neutral element). A *matrix* is a set  $\{(x | \alpha); x \in X, \alpha \in A\}$  where  $X$  and  $A$  are respectively linearly ordered sets of letters and places of the same size, i.e.,  $|X| = |A| = n$ . Relabeling the letters  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  and the places  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  by their linear order, the determinant of a matrix is then defined as usual (except for sign) as

$$(-1)^{n(n-1)/2} \sum_{\sigma} (\text{sgn } \sigma) (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1}) (x_2 | \alpha_{\sigma_2}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}),$$

where  $\sigma$  ranges over all permutations of the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  of indices. One verifies that the above expression equals (expansion by columns instead of rows)

$$(-1)^{n(n-1)/2} \sum_{\sigma} (\text{sgn } \sigma) (x_{\sigma_1} | \alpha_1) (x_{\sigma_2} | \alpha_2) \cdots (x_{\sigma_n} | \alpha_n).$$

We wish to recast this definition in a form that will be suitable for generalization to the fourfold algebra. To this end, we write the above determinant by the notation  $(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n)$  and we note that this expression extends to a bilinear map from the exterior algebra  $\text{Ext}(X)$  in the letters, and from the exterior algebra  $\text{Ext}(A)$  in the places, with values in the symmetric algebra in the letterplaces  $(x | \alpha)$ . We are thus led to generalize such a bilinear map to superalgebras by suitably generalizing the notion of determinant and of the Laplace expansion that characterizes it. We first have to recast the classical Laplace expansions of a determinant in a language that is suitable for generalization. It turns out that the language of Hopf algebras is eminently suited to this purpose. We first review this language in the (classical) case of two exterior

algebras  $\text{Ext}(X)$  and  $\text{Ext}(A)$  or, what is equivalent, to the case of the super-algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  where  $L^0 = L^+ = P^0 = P^+ = \emptyset$ . In this special case, the determinant can be viewed as a bilinear form from  $\text{Super}[L] \times \text{Super}[P]$  to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . Let  $w$  be a word in  $\text{Mon}[L]$  and let  $w'$  be a word in  $\text{Mon}[P]$ . We shall define  $(w | w')$  as an element of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . The bilinear function  $(w | w')$  shall satisfy the following conditions:

- (i)  $(w | w') = 0$  unless the words  $w$  and  $w'$  have the same length.
- (ii)  $(w | w') = (x | \alpha)$  if  $w = x$  and  $w' = \alpha$ , that is, if the words are of length one, that is, if the words reduce to a single letter and place.
- (iii)  $(1 | 1) = 1$ , where  $1$ , the identity of the algebra, can be identified with a word of length zero.

Finally, we shall impose on  $(w | w')$  the analog of Laplace expansions. To state these properly we recall that if  $w$  is a word in an exterior algebra, the *coproduct*

$$\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$$

is the sum over all pairs of such words  $w_{(1)}$  and  $w_{(2)}$  such that  $w_{(1)}w_{(2)} = w$ , with suitable signs (incorporated in the notation) which need only be specified in the text.

In the notation of Hopf algebras, the Laplace expansion of a determinant  $(w | w'w'')$  takes the pleasing form

$$\sum_w \pm(w_{(1)} | w')(w_{(2)} | w''),$$

where again we do not yet worry about signs. There is a similar expansion "by columns" that is similar to the present expansion by rows.

We now generalize this notation to an arbitrary fourfold algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . The fourfold algebra is the tensor product of four algebras, each one generated by those letterplaces  $(x | \alpha)$  where  $x$  is either positive or negative, and  $\alpha$  either positive or negative (recall that there are no neutral letters or places). Each factor in such a tensor product is an exterior algebra, a divided powers algebra, or a symmetric algebra.

Similarly, each of the superalgebras  $\text{Super}[L]$  and  $\text{Super}[P]$  is the tensor product of an exterior algebra and a divided powers algebra.

We now extend the definition of a "determinant" (which we call a *biproduct*) to the fourfold algebra as follows. If  $w \in \text{Super}[L]$  and  $w', w'' \in \text{Super}[P]$ , we again define a bilinear form  $(w | w')$  taking values in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  (note that we now allow  $L$  and  $P$  to be arbitrary proper alphabets, that is, alphabets without neutral elements). The biproduct  $(w | w')$  will be subject to (i), (ii), and (iii) exactly as above, and to the technical condition

- (iv)  $(x^{(n)} | \alpha^{(n)}) = (x | \alpha)^{(n)}$  for divided powers of positively signed letters and places.

Finally, one assumes analogs of the Laplace expansions in the form

$$(*) \quad (w | w'w'') = \sum_w \pm(w_{(1)} | w')(w_{(2)} | w''),$$

with suitable signs, where

$$\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$$

is the coproduct in the Hopf algebra  $\text{Super}[L]$  (see below for further explanations). One also assumes a similar Laplace expansion where the roles of letters and places are interchanged.

The sum on the right of the Laplace expansion (\*), as well as the sign of each term, can be understood without knowledge of Hopf algebras as follows. The sum on the right of (\*) ranges over all distinct ordered pairs  $w_{(1)}, w_{(2)}$  of subwords of  $w$  such that  $w_{(1)}w_{(2)} = w$ . By (i), the only nonzero terms are given by pairs  $w_{(1)}, w_{(2)}$  such that  $\text{Length}(w_{(2)}) = \text{Length}(w')$  and  $\text{Length}(w_{(1)}) = \text{Length}(w'')$ . The sign of each term on the right of (\*) is determined by the following rule. In the monoid  $\text{Mon}[L \oplus P]$  generated by the disjoint sum of the alphabets  $L$  and  $P$ , consider the words  $ww'w''$  and  $w_{(1)}w'w_{(2)}w''$ . Evidently the second word can be obtained from the first by a succession of transpositions of adjacent elements of  $L \oplus P$  (with proper care given to divided powers). The sign of the corresponding term on the right of (\*) is then the parity of the number of such transpositions, for which the two adjacent elements of  $L \oplus P$ , which are being transposed, are both negatively signed. We stress the fact that of the two letters being transposed, one may belong to  $L$  and another to  $P$ .

EXAMPLE. Suppose all letters are positively signed, and places are of arbitrary signature. Then

$$(a^{(2)}b | \alpha\beta\gamma) = (a^{(2)} | \alpha\beta)(b | \gamma) + (ab | \alpha\beta)(a | \gamma).$$

(v) Finally, one assumes a dual Laplace expansion

$$(w'w'' | w) = \sum_w \pm(w' | w_{(1)})(w'' | w_{(2)})$$

with a similar rule for the signs.

We show in the text that these expansion rules are consistent. They define a bilinear form, which we call the *biproduct*, which can be viewed as a signed generalization of the determinant. When  $w$  and  $w'$  are products of distinct positively signed letters and places, then the biproduct  $(w | w')$  reduces to the permanent. This is not the case, however, for  $(w | w')$  when  $w$  and  $w'$  are arbitrary products of divided powers. In this case, the pair  $(w | w')$  can in no way be seen as the generalization of the determinant or permanent of a matrix (unless one is willing to consider the possibility that the set of rows and the set of columns of such a "matrix" shall be allowed to become multisets).

The biproduct preserves all formal properties (that is, the Laplace expansions) of a determinant, except for signs. As already remarked, all of linear and

multilinear algebra can be recast in terms of Laplace identities. It stands to reason, therefore, to expect that the biproduct will yield a generalization of linear algebra to "signed" vector spaces and signed modules generally. In this paper we take two steps toward the realization of this program, which we now proceed to informally describe.

The first step is the extension to the fourfold algebra of the standard basis theorem of Doubilet, Rota, and Stein (a special case of our result, which in the present notation corresponds to setting  $L = L^-$  and  $P = P^-$ ). Such a generalization proceeds as follows. Define a Young diagram over  $L$  (and similarly over  $P$ ) as a sequence  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  of words  $w_i$  in  $\text{Mon}[L]$ , such that  $\lambda_i = \text{Length}(w_i)$  and  $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_n$ . The vector  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots)$  is the *shape* of the Young diagram. If

$$w_i = x_{i1}x_{i2} \cdots x_{i\lambda_i}, \quad x_{ij} \in L,$$

where we have written out each divided power by repeating the same letter (strictly speaking, this is an abuse of notation), then the words

$$\tilde{w}_j = x_{1j}x_{2j} \cdots x_{\lambda_j j}$$

define the *dual diagram*  $\tilde{D}$  of shape  $\tilde{\lambda}$ .

A Young diagram  $D$  over  $L$  (or over  $P$ ) will be said to be *standard* when, for every pair of words

$$\begin{aligned} w_i &= x_1x_2 \cdots x_r, & x_j &\in L, \\ \tilde{w}_i &= y_1y_2 \cdots y_s, & y_j &\in L, \end{aligned}$$

where  $w_i$  is in  $D$  and  $\tilde{w}_i$  is in  $\tilde{D}$  the following conditions are satisfied. Let us refer to  $w_i$  as a *row* of the diagram and to  $\tilde{w}_i$  as a *column* of the diagram. Choose a linear order on the alphabet  $L$ , which will remain fixed from now on. Then

(i) two successive letters  $x_i$  and  $x_{i+1}$  in the same row are in nondecreasing order ( $x_i \leq x_{i+1}$ ) if they are both positively signed and in strictly increasing order ( $x_i < x_{i+1}$ ) if they are both negatively signed.

(ii) two successive letters  $y_i$  and  $y_{i+1}$  in the same column of the tableau  $D$  (i.e., in the same row of the tableau  $\tilde{D}$ ) are in strictly increasing order ( $y_i < y_{i+1}$ ) if they are both positively signed and in nondecreasing order ( $y_i \leq y_{i+1}$ ) if they are both negatively signed.

(iii) two successive letters in the same row (or in the same column) which are of different signatures are in strictly increasing order.

A similar definition is given for Young diagrams made out of  $P$ .

Now let  $D$  and  $E = [w'_1, \dots, w'_n]$  be Young diagrams of the same shape made out of the alphabets  $L$  and  $P$ , respectively. We define the *Young tableau* of the diagram pair  $D, E$  to be

$$\text{Tab}(D | E) = \pm(w_1 | w'_1)(w_2 | w'_2) \cdots (w_n | w'_n).$$

(This is a slight oversimplification, because of the possible occurrence of divided powers—the text gives the precise definition.)

A *standard Young tableau*  $\text{Tab}(D | E)$  is a Young tableau where both diagrams  $D$  and  $E$  are standard. Our main result states that standard Young tableaux are an integral basis of the superalgebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . Actually, the final result is stronger. It states that a (not necessarily standard) tableau  $\text{Tab}(D | E)$  is uniquely expressible as a linear combination with integer coefficients of standard Young tableaux. If  $\text{Tab}(D | E)$  is of shape  $\lambda$ , then the only standard Young tableaux occurring with nonzero coefficients are of shapes which are greater than  $\lambda$  in the dominance order of shapes. Thus the submodules, spanned by all tableaux whose shapes form an order ideal in the partially ordered set of shapes under the dominance order, span an invariant submodule of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ , under permutations of both letters and places.

An immediate corollary of this theorem is that the number of standard Young diagrams is independent of the linear ordering chosen for the alphabet. No direct combinatorial proof of this surprising fact is known at present.

The proof of the standard basis theorem proceeds in two steps. The fact that the standard tableaux span the superalgebra is a consequence of the following *straightening formula*

$$\sum_w \pm(vw_{(1)} | u')(w_{(2)}w | u) = \sum_{u,v} \pm(wv_{(1)} | u'u_{(1)})(v_{(2)}w' | u_{(2)}).$$

(For the actual computation of the signs, consult the text.)

The straightening formula leads to a recursive algorithm (ultimately going back to Alfred Young) to express any monomial in the superalgebra as an integral linear combination of standard tableaux.

The fact that the standard tableaux are linearly independent is subtler; it is based on a refined duality. One defines a dual alphabet  $L^* = L^{*+} \cup L^{*-}$  with  $L^{*+}$  in bijective correspondence with  $L^-$  and  $L^{*-}$  with  $L^+$ . Thus, if  $x$  is a letter, then  $x^*$  is a letter of the opposite sign; similarly, for  $P^*$ . One then defines a scalar bilinear form

$$\langle p, q \rangle, \quad p \in \text{Super}[L^* | P^*], \quad q \in \text{Super}[L | P],$$

by the following rules:

(i)  $\langle (x^* | \alpha^*), (y | \beta) \rangle = 0$  if  $x \neq y$  or  $\alpha \neq \beta$ , and

(ii)  $\langle (x^* | \alpha^*), (x | \alpha) \rangle = \pm 1$ , where the sign on the right is negative if and only if both  $x$  and  $\alpha^*$  are negatively signed. To see the motivation for this rule, we (quite unrigorously) rewrite the left side as

$$(x^* | \alpha^*)(x | \alpha) = \pm(x^* | x)(\alpha^* | \alpha),$$

and we see that the minus sign is due to the "fact" that the elements  $x$  and  $\alpha^*$  have been commuted.

(iii) Analogs of Laplace expansions. For example, if  $w'w'' \in \text{Super}[L^* | P^*]$  and  $w \in \text{Super}[L | P]$ , we set

$$\langle w'w'', w \rangle = \sum_w \pm(w', w_{(1)})\langle w'', w_{(2)} \rangle.$$



Here, the coproduct

$$\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$$

is taken in the Hopf algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ , which is the tensor product of two Hopf algebras; that is, the pairs  $w_{(1)}$  and  $w_{(2)}$  range over all subwords of  $w$ , for  $w \in \text{Super}[L | P]$ , such that  $w = w_{(1)}w_{(2)}$ . Again, the signs on the right are determined according to the number of transpositions of adjacent negatively signed elements (letters or places).

The byproduct of this seemingly unusual setup for duality of two algebras is the generalization to superalgebras of the celebrated result of A. Young (in Young's language, stating that  $P(12)N(12) = 0$ ). In this present context, we prove that  $\langle (w^* | u^*), (w' | u') \rangle = 0$  whenever the length of the biproducts is two or more. This leads to a considerable simplification of the computation of

$$\langle \text{Tab}(D^* | E^*), \text{Tab}(D' | E') \rangle.$$

One finds upon evaluating that on the right side only sums of certain simple monomials appear (which we have called Gale-Ryser interpolants after a famous theorem of Gale and Ryser on the existence of 0-1-matrices having given row and column sums). One goes on to establish a triangular biorthogonality property for standard tableaux, from which linear independence is inferred.

In order to describe the invariant-theoretic results, we shall assume from now on that  $P = P^- = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . We define a *bracket* (of length  $n$ ) to be the element  $[w] = (w | 12 \dots n)$  of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . Clearly the bracket will vanish unless the word  $w$  in  $\text{Super}[L]$  is of length  $n$ . From now on we shall separately consider either of the two special cases  $L = L^-$  or  $L = L^+$ . In the case  $L = L^-$ , the bracket coincides with the classical bracket first defined by Cayley; that is, if  $w = x_1x_2 \dots x_n$ , the bracket is the determinant of the matrix of  $n$  row vectors  $x_i$  which have the entries

$$x_i = ((x_i | 1), (x_i | 2), \dots, (x_i | n)).$$

Note that because  $L = L^-$  and  $P = P^-$ , each entry is a neutral element, and thus can legitimately be called a scalar. The straightening formula now specializes to give identities on brackets of the form

$$(**) \quad \sum_w \pm [vw_{(1)}][w_{(2)}w'] = \sum_v \pm [wv_{(1)}][v_{(2)}w'],$$

which, as is known, can be used for an abstract characterization of the bracket. All of linear algebra is "coded" in these identities.

In the second case,  $L = L^+$ , one obtains a remarkable generalization of the determinant. The bracket  $[w]$ , for  $w \in \text{Super}[L] = \text{Super}[L^+]$ , will now no longer be scalar valued but will take its value in an exterior algebra. We shall call it the *skew bracket*. It can no longer be viewed as the determinant or the permanent of a "matrix", unless  $w$  is a product of  $n$  distinct letters. One computes, for

example,  $[a^{(n)}] = (a | 1)(a | 2) \dots (a | n)$ , where each  $(a | i)$  is an element of degree one of an exterior algebra. More generally, one has

$$[w][w'] = (-1)^n [w'][w],$$

and identities of the form (\*\*) hold for skew brackets (with fewer signs) and in fact can be used to characterize skew brackets. Thus, the possibility arises that skew brackets are the syntax for a semantic construct which will be a "skew" analog of linear algebra. We shall leave this enticing possibility untouched for the moment, and proceed directly to the invariant-theoretic applications of the bracket (both classical and skew).

For ease of exposition, we deal separately with symmetric and skew-symmetric tensors, keeping the narrative as informal as possible, at the cost of some inaccuracies which are corrected in the text.

Given a vector space  $V$  of dimension  $n$  over a field of characteristic zero, a symmetric tensor  $t$  over  $V$  (that is, a homogeneous element of the symmetric algebra  $S(V)$ ) has, relative to a basis  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$ , the coordinates  $a_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_n}$ , so that

$$t = \sum \binom{k}{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_n} a_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_n} e_1^{j_1} e_2^{j_2} \dots e_n^{j_n},$$

where the sum ranges over all  $n$ -tuples  $(j_1 \dots j_n)$ ; note that almost all the terms equal zero (because the multinomial coefficient vanishes). The integer  $k$  is the degree or *step* of the tensor. An *invariant*  $I$  of  $t$  is a polynomial in the coordinates  $a_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_n}$  which is independent of the choice of the basis, except for a constant factor. Thus, if  $I$  is an invariant, then the *condition*  $I = 0$  is *geometric*; that is, it is independent of the coordinate system. The idea of invariant theory is to express by the vanishing of invariants certain logically or combinatorially defined properties of tensors such as decomposability, rank, divisibility by another tensor, etc. To this end, a slight extension of the notion of invariant is needed, namely, the notion of a covariant.

Observe that a *joint invariant* of a set of tensors may be defined in the obvious way. When the coordinates of one or more of the tensors of such a set are allowed to be independent transcendentals (adjoined to the base field), a joint invariant will turn out to be a polynomial in these independent transcendentals. Such a polynomial is called a *covariant*, with the understanding that a covariant vanishes when it vanishes identically as a polynomial in its independent transcendentals.

We next describe the symbolic method for the representation of all invariants (and hence all covariants) of symmetric tensors. To every (symmetric) tensor  $t$  we associate an indefinite supply of letters (or *symbols*) belonging to a *negatively signed* alphabet  $L^-$ , and we say that a letter "belongs" to the tensor  $t$ .

We next define an operator  $U$ , the *umbral operator*, from the superalgebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  to the "scalar" coordinates of a tensor of step  $k$ . We simply set

$$\langle U, (a | 1)^{j_1} (a | 2)^{j_2} \dots (a | n)^{j_n} \rangle = a_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_n},$$

where  $a$  is any of the letters of  $L$  belonging to a tensor  $t$  of step  $k$ , and where  $j_1 + j_2 + \dots + j_n = k$ . If  $j_1 + j_2 + \dots + j_n \neq k$ , the right side is set equal to zero. Note that all  $(a | i)$  are neutral elements.

If  $w$  is any monomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  (a symmetric algebra) we can write  $w = w(a)w(b)\dots$  when  $w(a)$  is the product of all letterplaces  $(a | i)$  containing the letter  $a$ , etc. We set

$$\langle U, w \rangle = \langle U, w(a)w(b)\dots \rangle = \langle U, w(a) \rangle \langle U, w(b) \rangle \dots$$

Finally, we extend the definition of  $U$  to all of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  by linearity. The main result states that a polynomial  $I$  is an invariant of a set of symmetric tensors if and only if  $I = \langle U, p \rangle$ , where  $p$  is a polynomial in brackets (in the present case of symmetric tensors, the brackets are nothing but ordinary determinants).

The classification of invariants can be further simplified by applying the standard basis theorem. According to this theorem, any polynomial in brackets can be integrally expressed as an integral linear combination of bracket products which correspond to standard tableaux, in the given linear ordering of the alphabet  $L$ . Thus, it suffices (by and large) to consider the case where  $p$  is a standard tableau in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ , where each row is of length  $n$  (thus, the  $n$  places  $1, 2, \dots, n$  appear in each row on the right side of the tableau). If  $x_i$  is a transcendental, we can safely set

$$\langle U, (x | i)^j \rangle = x_i^j,$$

thereby identifying  $x$  with a symbol. If we further agree that the linear order of  $L$  shall be chosen in such a way as to place last all symbols corresponding to transcendentals (that is, after all symbols corresponding to genuine tensors), then a standard tableau for a covariant is partitioned into an upper part, containing all symbols corresponding to the tensor(s), and a lower part, containing only (symbols for) transcendentals. For all practical purposes, only the upper part will matter in the description of the covariant. We thus succeed in associating to every covariant a standard Young diagram in the familiar form such as

$$\begin{array}{c} abcd \\ abe \\ bfg. \end{array}$$

The invariant theory of symmetric tensors can be carried much farther by the symbolic method, but the present exposition now turns to the much less explored subject of skew-symmetric tensors, where previous work (done largely in the nineteenth century) was considerably more limited in scope. Our objectives will be, first, to develop a symbolic method that will be strikingly analogous to the symbolic method for symmetric tensors, and second, to show by examples that the method is (for skew-symmetric tensors better than for symmetric tensors) effective both for the construction and for the interpretation of invariants and covariants.

The method is "dual" to the one described above for symmetric tensors, in the sense that the words "commutative" and "anticommutative" are judiciously interchanged. It is not clear a priori, however, how such an interchange should be carried out, and in fact the method we are about to describe reveals new clues to how this interchange may be effective in disparate situations.

A skew-symmetric tensor  $t$  of step  $k$  is a homogeneous element of the exterior algebra  $\wedge(V)$ . Relative to a basis  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$  of  $V$ , the tensor can be written in the form

$$t = \sum_{i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_k} (a_{i_1 i_2 \dots i_k}) e_{i_1} \wedge e_{i_2} \wedge \dots \wedge e_{i_k}$$

where the sum ranges over all subsets  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k\}$  of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , with the customary conventions relative to signs, namely.

$$a_{\sigma_1 \sigma_2 \dots \sigma_k} = (\text{sgn } \sigma) a_{i_1 i_2 \dots i_k}.$$

An invariant  $I$  of  $t$  is a polynomial in the coordinates  $a_{i_1 i_2 \dots i_k}$  which is independent of the coordinates, except for a constant factor, so that (again) the condition  $I = 0$  is geometric. Joint invariants and covariants are defined as in the symmetric case.

We now describe the delicate symbolic method by which all invariants (and covariants) of skew-symmetric tensors can be represented. Choose a linearly ordered alphabet  $L$  which is now *positively signed* ( $L = L^+$ ). Recall that the place alphabet  $P$  is the *negatively signed* set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . To every (skew-symmetric) tensor  $t$  we assign an infinite supply of letters "belonging" to it, and we assume that the supply is ample enough for all purposes. In addition, we assume that  $L$  contains an indefinitely large supply of letters belonging to an indefinitely large supply of independent transcendentals that may be adjoined to the ground field if and when necessary. We next define an umbral operator  $U$  that (again) maps the superalgebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  to the field of scalars, eventually with transcendentals adjoined.

If  $a$  is a letter belonging to the skew-symmetric tensor  $t$  of step  $k$ , we set

$$\langle U, (a^{(k)} | i_1 i_2 \dots i_k) \rangle = a_{i_1 i_2 \dots i_k}.$$

On the right side is the scalar component of the tensor  $t$  relative to the basis  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$ , which will remain fixed from now on. On the left side,  $a^{(k)}$  is the  $k$ th divided power of the letter  $a$ , so that (by the properties of the byproduct)

$$(a^{(k)} | i_1 i_2 \dots i_k) = (a | i_1)(a | i_2) \dots (a | i_k).$$

Note that for  $i \neq j$  we have  $(a | i)(a | j) = -(a | j)(a | i)$ , since  $(a | i)$  is negatively signed to all  $a \in L$  and  $i \in P$ .

Next, set  $\langle U, (a^{(j)} | i_1 i_2 \dots i_j) \rangle = 0$ , if  $j \neq k$ .

Now let  $m$  be an arbitrary monomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . By altering the sign of  $m$ , if necessary, we can write

$$m = \pm m(a)m(b)\dots,$$

where  $m(a)$  is the product of all letter places  $(a | i)$  containing the letter  $a$ , etc., and, what is essential, where  $a < b < \dots$  in the linear order of  $L$ . Thus,

$$m(a) = (a^{(j)} | i_1 i_2 \dots i_j)$$

for some  $j$ , similarly for  $m(b)$ , etc.

Now set

$$\langle U, m(a)m(b) \dots \rangle = \langle U, m(a) \rangle \langle U, m(b) \rangle \dots,$$

and extend to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  by linearity. We prove that the operator  $U$  is well defined. For example, let  $a$  and  $b$  be both letters belonging to the tensor  $t$ , and suppose that  $a < b$ . Then

$$\langle U, (a^{(k)} | 12 \dots k)(b^{(k)} | 12 \dots k) \rangle = (a_{12 \dots k})^2,$$

but

$$\langle U, (b^{(k)} | 12 \dots k)(a^{(k)} | 12 \dots k) \rangle = -(a_{12 \dots k})^2.$$

if  $k$  is odd. As another example, let  $u$  and  $v$  be vectors in  $V$ , that is, skew-symmetric tensors of step one. Then we have

$$\langle U, (a | i) \rangle = u_i, \quad \langle U, (b | i) \rangle = v_i,$$

if  $a$  belongs to  $u$  and  $b$  belongs to  $v$ . Thus, if  $a < b$ , then

$$\langle U, (ab | ij) \rangle = \langle U, (a | i)(b | j) + (b | i)(a | j) \rangle = u_i v_j - u_j v_i,$$

and we find (spectacularly enough) that

$$\langle U, (ab | ij) \rangle = \langle U, (ba | ij) \rangle,$$

as we might well expect, since  $(ab | ij) = (ba | ij)$  in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ , and since  $U$  is well defined.

More generally, let  $u^1, u^2, \dots, u^n$  be vectors, and let  $a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_n$  be symbols (letters) belonging to each. Then we find

$$\langle U, [a_1 a_2 \dots a_n] \rangle = [u^1 u^2 \dots u^n]$$

where the left bracket is the bracket in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ , and the right bracket is the ordinary determinant of the vectors  $u^1, \dots, u^n$  relative to the basis  $e_1, \dots, e_n$ . In particular, we find that

$$\langle U, [a_{\sigma 1} a_{\sigma 2} \dots a_{\sigma n}] \rangle = [u^1 u^2 \dots u^n]$$

for any permutation  $\sigma$ . This point is worth stressing, because it is the point at which Weitzenböck's attempt to develop a symbolic method for skew-symmetric tensors failed. Weitzenböck (like all other classical invariant theorists) failed to distinguish between a vector  $u$  and a symbol  $a$  representing  $u$ , and used the same notation for both. As a consequence, his brackets  $[u^1 u^2 \dots u^n]$  were to be taken sometimes as symmetric and sometimes as skew-symmetric relative to permutations of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  depending on the context! Small wonder that few invariants (other than those previously known) should have been computed by such a technique.

Our main result is formally similar to the main theorem for symmetric tensors. It states that every invariant (or joint invariant) of a skew-symmetric tensor  $t$  can be written in the form  $\langle U, p \rangle$ , where  $p$  is a polynomial in skew brackets containing only symbols belonging to  $t$ .

Again, the listing of invariants is simplified by applying the standard basis theorem to the subalgebra of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  spanned by polynomials in skew brackets. A skew bracket monomial, that is, a product of skew brackets

$$m = [w_1][w_2] \dots [w_j],$$

where  $w_i$  is a word in  $\text{Super}[L]$  which is of length  $n$ , stands for a Young diagram  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_j)$ . Let us write  $n = \text{Tab}(D)$ . (The tableaux in the places need not be written out, since they all consist of successions of the single word  $w' = 12 \dots n$ .) By the standard basis theorem, those monomials  $m = \text{Tab}(D)$ , where  $D$  is a standard Young diagram, span the subspace of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  of bracket polynomials. Since  $L = L^+$ , a diagram  $D$  will be standard if along each row the letters appear in nondecreasing order, and along each column the letters appear in strictly increasing order. In other words, two successive letters  $a$  and  $b$  in a word  $w_i$  must satisfy the condition  $a \leq b$ , whereas the  $j$ th letters  $c$  and  $d$  of two successive words  $w_i$  and  $w_{i+1}$  must satisfy the condition  $c < d$ .

For covariants, it is again convenient to let the letters belonging to vectors (and tensors) with independent transcendental entries be last in the order of the alphabet  $L$ , so that  $D$  partitions into an upper and a lower part as before. The upper part of  $D$  suffices to define a covariant. In other words, a covariant is to be specified by a Young diagram  $D' = (w'_1, \dots, w'_j)$  where  $\text{Length}(w'_i) \leq n$ . The covariant will be  $\text{Tab}(w'_1 w''_1, \dots, w'_j w''_j)$ , where  $w'_i w''_i$  is of length  $n$ , and where the words  $w''_i$  are made up of symbols (letters) belonging to independent transcendentals.

Contrary to what happens for symmetric tensors, the translation of a geometric property into the vanishing of covariants turn out to be successful for skew-symmetric tensors, and we devote Chapter 5 to the discussion of a number of such examples old and new.

For a tensor  $t$  of step 2, or bivector, the only invariant is easily proved to be the Pfaffian, which for  $n = 2k$  is symbolically represented by

$$a_1^{(2)} a_2^{(2)} \dots a_k^{(2)},$$

where  $a_i$  are distinct letters belonging to  $t$ . The covariants of  $t$  are represented by incomplete Pfaffian

$$a_1^{(2)} a_2^{(2)} \dots a_j^{(2)}, \quad j \leq k,$$

and (as is well known) they give the rank of the tensor.

For a tensor of step  $k$ , the covariants

$$C_p: \begin{matrix} a_1 a_2 \cdots a_p \\ a_1^{(k-1)} \\ \vdots \\ a_p^{(k-1)} \end{matrix}$$

determine the rank of the tensor: if  $C_{r+1}$  vanishes but  $C_r$  does not vanish, then the tensor is of rank  $r$ .

The classical Grassmann conditions for a tensor to be decomposable translate into the vanishing of either of the two covariants

$$\begin{matrix} a^{(k)}b \\ b^{(k-1)} \end{matrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{matrix} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ b^{(k-2)} \end{matrix}$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are distinct letters belonging to the tensor.

The condition that a tensor of step 3 be divisible by a vector is the vanishing of the covariant

$$\begin{matrix} a^{(2)}b^{(3)} \\ ac^{(3)} \end{matrix}$$

where  $a, b, c$  are symbols belonging to the same tensor. These conditions are generalized in the text to give covariants specifying whether a given tensor of arbitrary step is divisible by one, two, etc., linearly independent vectors.

In conclusion, we list those covariants which specify each of the canonical forms for a tensor of step 3 in dimension  $n = 6$  and 7.

For  $n = 6$  the covariants that specify each of the four canonical forms are

$$\begin{matrix} a^{(3)}b^{(2)} \\ b; \\ a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c \\ bc^{(2)}; \end{matrix}$$

and

$$\begin{matrix} a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c \\ bc^{(2)}d^{(3)}. \end{matrix}$$

We find it remarkable that each of these turns out to be a standard Young diagram. A similar phenomenon happens for  $n = 7$ .

## Notation Guide

Mon( $A$ ), 2	$\Delta^{(n)}$ , 10
cont( $w; a$ ), 3	$(x   \alpha)$ , 15
$A^+, A^0, A^-, A^*$ , 3	$(w   u)$ , 16
$A_d$ , 3	tab( $w   u$ ), 22
$a^{(n)}$ , 3	Tab( $D   E$ ), 27
Div( $A$ ), 3	Tab <sup>+</sup> ( $D   E$ ), 34
Disp( $w$ ), 3	$K[W]$ , 42
Cont( $w$ ), 3	$\bigwedge^k(V)$ , 42
$ w $ , 4	$S^k(V)$ , 43
Tens[ $A$ ], 4	$\langle U, f \rangle$ , 48
Super[ $A$ ], 4	cov( $D$ ), 51
$\Delta u = \sum u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}$ , 8	Sp <sub>2m</sub> ( $K$ ), 53
$\varepsilon(w)$ , 10	$O_n(K)$ , 54
$S(w)$ , 10	$\alpha \wedge \beta$ , 56

Dedicated  
to the memory  
of  
Alfredo Capelli,  
H. W. Turnbull,  
Alfred Young,  
Roland Weitzenböck.

## 1. The Superalgebra Super[A]

**0. Introduction.** We define in this chapter a generalization of the ordinary algebra of polynomials in a set of  $A$  variables with integer coefficients. Our variables shall be of three kinds: positively signed, neutral, and negatively signed:  $A = A^+ \cup A^0 \cup A^-$ .

Positively signed variables are the least familiar: they are the *divided powers*. To every positively signed variable  $a$  we assign a sequence  $a^{(1)}, a^{(2)}, a^{(3)}, \dots$  of divided powers, which behave algebraically "as if"  $a^{(i)}$  were to equal  $a^i/i!$ . Then for example we have the "rules"

$$a^{(i)}a^{(j)} = \binom{i+j}{i} a^{(i+j)}$$
$$(a^{(i)})^{(j)} = \frac{(ij)!}{j!(i!)^j} a^{(ij)},$$

and

$$(a+b)^{(i)} = \sum_{j+k=i} a^{(j)}b^{(k)}.$$

Positively signed variables and their divided powers commute. This seemingly artificial device is essential in making invariant theory characteristic-free.

Neutral variables behave like ordinary polynomial variables; in particular they also commute.

Negatively signed variables  $a, b$  anticommute:  $ab = -ba$  and  $a^2 = b^2 = 0$ . However, we have  $ac = ca$  when  $a$  is negatively signed and  $c$  is a variable (or a divided power) of either of the two other kinds.

The superalgebra Super[A] is the algebra spanned by monomials obtained by multiplying variables of each of the three kinds—for positively signed variables, one multiplies divided powers. The variables appearing in a monomial can be permuted at will, subject only to the condition that a minus sign be prefixed every time two negatively signed variables are permuted.

Much of the work in this chapter goes in showing that the structure of a Hopf algebra can be given to the superalgebra Super[A] by setting

$$\Delta(a)^{(i)} = \sum_{j+k=i} a^{(j)} \otimes a^{(k)}, \quad a \in A^+,$$

$$\Delta a = 1 \otimes a + a \otimes 1, \quad a \in A^0 \cup A^-,$$

and extending  $\Delta$  so that it is an algebra homomorphism from Super[A] to Super[A  $\oplus$  A]. The only delicate point arises in the commutation rule  $(1 \otimes a)(b \otimes 1) = -b \otimes a$  when both  $a$  and  $b$  are negatively signed. Because of this feature, the superalgebra Super[A  $\oplus$  A] cannot be identified with the ordinary tensor product Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[A] of commutative algebra, but rather it is a "signed" tensor product.

In geometric and combinatorial interpretations, the neutral elements will not directly appear; they appear indirectly as "scalars." Remarkably, positively signed variables give the symbolic representation of skew-symmetric tensors, and negatively signed variables give the symbolic representation of symmetric tensors.

Combinatorially, positively signed variables relate to the algebra of multisets (or bosons), and negatively signed variables relate to the algebra of sets (or fermions).

The material in this chapter offers no great novelty. Readers acquainted with the techniques of Hopf algebras may simply skim over the definitions and proceed to the next chapter.

**1. Definitions.** Let  $A$  be a set. We denote by  $\text{Mon}(A)$  the free monoid generated by  $A$ . We recall that the elements of  $\text{Mon}(A)$  are finite sequences of elements in  $A$ . If  $w \in \text{Mon}(A)$  with  $w(1) = x_1, w(2) = x_2, \dots, w(n) = x_n$ , then we shall call  $w$  a word and denote it by  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$ . Two such words  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$  and  $w' = y_1 y_2 \cdots y_m$  are equal when  $n = m$  and  $x_1 = y_1, x_2 = y_2, \dots, x_n = y_n$ .

If  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$  is a word in  $\text{Mon}(A)$ , we shall call  $x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$  its display and  $n$  its length. The words having length 1 will be identified with the elements of  $A$ . We shall allow  $w$  to be the empty sequence, in this case taking  $n$  to be 0, and denoting this word by 1. (To avoid confusion, we shall always assume that  $1 \notin A$ .)

The product of two words  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$  and  $w' = y_1 y_2 \cdots y_m$  is the word  $ww' = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n y_1 y_2 \cdots y_m$ . Endowed with this operation,  $\text{Mon}(A)$  is an associative (but not commutative) semigroup with identity.

A multiset on a set  $A$  is a function  $m: A \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}^+$  where  $\mathbf{Z}^+$  is the set of nonnegative integers. For  $a \in A$ , the integer  $m(a)$  is called the multiplicity of the element  $a$  in the multiset  $m$ . There is a useful way to visualize multisets, which we shall often tacitly appeal to. Suppose, for example, that  $m(a) = 2, m(b) = 1, m(c) = 3$  and that  $m(x) = 0$  for all other  $x \in A$ . Then we describe the multiset by the display  $\{a, b, c, a, c, c\}$ .

Let  $w \in \text{Mon}(A)$ . We associate to  $w$  the multiset,  $\text{cont}(w)$ , on  $A$  defined by  $\text{cont}(w; a) = \text{cont}(w)(a) =$  the number of occurrences of the element  $a$  among the elements  $x_i$  in the display of  $w$ .

Sometimes, in this situation, we say the content of the word  $w$  is the multiset  $\text{cont}(w)$ .

A signed set  $A$  is a set together with three disjoint subsets, denoted by  $A^+, A^0$ , and  $A^-$ , whose union is  $A$ . We shall call the elements in  $A^+$  "positive," those in  $A^0$  "neutral," and those in  $A^-$  "negative." A function  $f: A \rightarrow B$  from a signed set  $A$  to a signed set  $B$  will always be assumed to satisfy the conditions  $f(A^+) \subset B^+, f(A^0) \subset B^0$ , and  $f(A^-) \subset B^-$ . The direct sum of two disjoint signed sets  $A$  and  $B$  is the signed set  $A \cup B$ , denoted by  $A \oplus B$ , where

$$(A \oplus B)^+ = A^+ \cup B^+, \quad (A \oplus B)^0 = A^0 \cup B^0, \quad (A \oplus B)^- = A^- \cup B^-.$$

The signed set  $A$  is said to be proper if  $A^0$  is empty. In this case, we define the adjoint of the signed set  $A$  in the following way. Let  $A^*$  be a set isomorphic to  $A$  via a mapping  $\phi: A \rightarrow A^*$ . We make  $A^*$  into a signed set by defining  $(A^*)^-$  to be  $\phi(A^+)$  and  $(A^*)^+$  to be  $\phi(A^-)$ . The mapping  $\phi$  induces a map (also denoted by  $\phi$ ) from  $\text{Mon}(A)$  to  $\text{Mon}(A^*)$ , obtained by setting  $\phi(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n) = \phi(x_1)\phi(x_2) \cdots \phi(x_n) = x_1^* x_2^* \cdots x_n^*$ .

The basic concept we shall use is that of an extended signed set. Consider a signed set  $A$ . The extended signed set of  $A$ , denoted by  $A_d$ , is defined as follows:

$$(A_d)^- = A^-, \quad (A_d)^0 = A^0, \quad (A_d)^+ = A^+ \times \mathbf{N}$$

where  $\mathbf{N} =$  natural numbers  $= \{1, 2, \dots\}$ . If  $a \in A^+$ , we shall write  $a$  instead of  $(a, 1)$  and, otherwise,  $a^{(n)}$  instead of  $(a, n)$ . We shall call  $a^{(n)}$  the  $n$ th divided power of the element  $a$ .

If  $A$  is a signed set, we denote by  $\text{Div}(A)$  the free monoid generated by the extended signed set  $A_d$ . A homomorphism  $\text{Disp}: \text{Div}(A) \rightarrow \text{Mon}(A)$  is defined as follows. If  $a \in A^-$  or  $a \in A^0$ , set  $\text{Disp}(a) = a$ . If  $a \in A^+$ , set  $\text{Disp}(a^{(n)}) = aa \cdots a$  ( $n$ -times). Using the homomorphism  $\text{Disp}$ , we define, for  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$ ,  $\text{Length}(w) = \text{length}(\text{Disp}(w))$  and  $\text{Cont}(w) = \text{cont}(\text{Disp}(w))$ .

To illustrate these ideas, let  $w = bc^{(3)}a^{(2)}a^{(3)}cd$  be in  $\text{Div}(A)$ . Then,  $\text{Disp}(w) = bcccaaaaacd$  and  $\text{Length}(w) = 11$ . Also,  $w$  has a content  $m$  where  $m(a) = 5, m(b) = 1, m(c) = 4$ , and  $m(d) = 1$ .

Different words in  $\text{Div}(A)$  may have the same "display," i.e.,  $\text{Disp}(w)$  may equal  $\text{Disp}(w')$  even though  $w \neq w'$ . For example, take  $w$  as above and  $w'$  to be  $bc^{(3)}a^{(5)}cd$ . Nevertheless, one can define an inverse mapping from the set  $\text{Mon}(A)$  to the set  $\text{Div}(A)$ , denoted by  $w \rightarrow \text{stand}(w)$ , which is however not a homomorphism of monoids. For  $w \in \text{Mon}(A)$ , define  $\text{stand}(w)$  to be the unique word in  $\text{Div}(A)$  such that

$$(a) \text{Disp}(\text{stand}(w)) = w;$$

$$(b) \text{if } \text{stand}(w) = y_1 y_2 \cdots y_k \text{ where } y_i \in A_d \text{ and if } y_j = a^{(i)} \text{ for some } a \in A^+, i \in \mathbf{N}, \text{ then } y_{j-1} \neq a^{(r)} \text{ and } y_{j+1} \neq a^{(s)} \text{ for all integers } r \text{ and } s.$$

So, with  $w$  and  $w'$  as in the above example, we have  $\text{stand}(\text{Disp}(w)) = w'$ .

The heart of many of the computations of invariant theory is the calculation of the sign of certain expressions. If  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$ , we define the *parity* of  $w$ , denoted by  $|w|$ , to be 0 or 1 depending on whether  $\sum_{a \in A^-} \text{Cont}(w; a)$  is even or odd. In the first case, we say that  $w$  is *positive* and in the second, *negative*. Arithmetical operations on the parity symbol will always be carried out in  $\mathbf{Z}_2$ ; for example, we have  $|ww'| = |w| + |w'|$ .

If  $k$  is an integer, we set  $\text{sign}(k) = (-1)^k$ .

**2. Construction of the superalgebra Super[A].** Let  $A$  be a signed set. We construct a  $\mathbf{Z}$ -algebra,  $\text{Tens}[A]$ , as follows: As a  $\mathbf{Z}$ -module,  $\text{Tens}[A]$  is free with basis consisting of the words in  $\text{Div}(A)$ . Thus, if  $p \in \text{Tens}[A]$ , then  $p$  can be written uniquely as a finite sum,  $p = \sum c_i w_i$  where  $c_i \in \mathbf{Z}$  and  $w_i \in \text{Div}(A)$ . Multiplication in  $\text{Tens}[A]$  is defined by extending the multiplication in  $\text{Div}(A)$ . So, if  $p$  is as above and  $q = \sum d_j w_j$  is another element in  $\text{Tens}[A]$ , then  $pq = \sum c_i d_j w_i w_j$  where the product  $w_i w_j$  is taken as in  $\text{Div}(A)$ . In this way,  $\text{Tens}[A]$  becomes an associative algebra with identity.

In  $\text{Tens}[A]$ , we define an ideal  $I_A$  (or simply  $I$ ) to be the ideal generated by all expressions of the following forms:

$$(I1) \quad uv - \text{sign}(|u||v|)vu \text{ for } u, v \in \text{Div}(A),$$

$$(I2) \quad aa, \text{ where } a \in A^-,$$

$$(I3) \quad a^{(i)} a^{(j)} - \binom{i+j}{i} a^{(i+j)} \text{ where } a \in A^+.$$

The quotient algebra  $\text{Tens}[A]/I$  will be denoted by  $\text{Super}[A]$ .

When the signed set  $A$  is proper, then in the algebra  $\text{Super}[A]$  we define a sequence of many operations  $p \rightarrow p^{(i)}$ , where  $p \in \text{Super}[A]$ , as follows. Such an element  $p$  can be written as a finite linear combination

$$p = \sum_j c_j \text{mon}(w_j)$$

where  $c_j \in \mathbf{Z}$  and  $\text{mon}(w_j)$  is the canonical image of  $w_j \in \text{Tens}[A]$  in  $\text{Super}[A]$ . Whenever no confusion is possible, we shall write  $w_j$  in place of  $\text{mon}(w_j)$ , thus

$$p = \sum_j c_j w_j.$$

We set  $p^{(0)} = 1$ , the identity of the superalgebra  $\text{Super}[A]$ ;  $p^{(1)} = p$ . If  $i$  is a positive integer other than 1, the definition of  $p^{(i)}$  is accomplished in the following steps:

*Step 1.* If  $p = a$ , with  $a \in A^-$ , a set  $p^{(i)} = 0$  if  $i > 1$ .

*Step 2.* If  $p = a^{(k)}$  with  $a \in A^+$ , set

$$p^{(i)} = (a^{(k)})^{(i)} = \frac{(ik)!}{i!(k!)^i} a^{(ki)}.$$

*Step 3.* If  $p = y_1 y_2 \cdots y_n$ , with  $y_i \in A_d$ , set  $p^{(i)} = y_1^{(i)} y_2^{(i)} \cdots y_n^{(i)}$ .

*Step 4.* If  $p = c \text{mon}(w)$ , where  $c \in \mathbf{Z}$  and  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$ , set  $p^{(i)} = c^i w^{(i)}$ .

*Step 5.* If  $p = \sum_{j=1}^n c_j w_j = \sum_{j=1}^n p_j$ , where  $p_j = c_j w_j$ , then set

$$p^{(i)} = \sum p_1^{(i_1)} p_2^{(i_2)} \cdots p_n^{(i_n)},$$

where the sum ranges over all  $n$ -tuples of nonnegative integers  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n$  such that  $i_1 + i_2 + \cdots + i_n = i$ .

When  $A$  is a signed set, the algebra  $\text{Super}[A]$  will be called the *superalgebra* generated by the signed set  $A$ . When  $A$  is a *proper* signed set, the superalgebra  $\text{Super}[A]$  will be tacitly assumed to be endowed with the operation  $p \rightarrow p^{(i)}$ , where it will be called the *divided power operation*.

Observe the following properties of  $\text{Super}[A]$ .

(1) We can set  $\text{Cont}(\text{mon}(w)) = \text{Cont}(w)$  and  $\text{Length}(\text{mon}(w)) = \text{Length}(w)$  for  $w \in \text{Div}[A]$ , as well as  $|\text{mon}(w)| = |w|$ . Thus, fixing a multiset  $m$  on  $A$ , the set of all  $\text{mon}(w)$  for  $w \in \text{Div}[A]$  with  $\text{Cont}(w) = m$  spans a submodule of  $\text{Super}[A]$ , which we call the submodule of all monomials of content  $m$ .

Indeed, let  $m$  be a multiset on  $A$ . We consider all words  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$  so that  $\text{Cont}(w) = m$ . These words, together with 0, span a submodule  $\text{Tens}_m[A]$  of  $\text{Tens}[A]$ . Furthermore,  $\text{Tens}[A] = \sum_m \text{Tens}_m[A]$  where the sum is a direct sum. Now, let  $i \in I$ . Then  $i = \sum i_m$  where  $i_m \in \text{Tens}_m[A]$ . Each  $i_m$  is in  $I$  since this property holds for the generators of  $I$ . It follows that if  $w, w' \in \text{Div}(A)$  with  $w \equiv w' \pmod{I}$  but  $w \notin I$ , then  $\text{Cont}(w) = \text{Cont}(w')$ ,  $\text{Length} w = \text{Length} w'$ , and  $|w| = |w'|$ . We sometimes speak of the "parity of a word in  $\text{Super}[A]$ ."

(2) If  $a, b \in A_d$ , then  $ab = ba$  in  $\text{Super}[A]$  unless  $a$  and  $b$  are negative in which case  $ab = -ba$ . (This follows from (I1).)

*Examples.* (1) If  $A = A^0$ , then  $\text{Super}[A] = \text{Symm}(A)$ , the  $\mathbf{Z}$ -algebra consisting of all polynomials with "variables" the elements  $a \in A$ , often called the symmetric algebra generated by the set  $A$ .

(2) If  $A = A^-$ , then  $\text{Super}[A] = \text{Wedge}(A)$ , the exterior algebra generated by the set  $A$ , that is, the  $\mathbf{Z}$ -algebra consisting of all skew-symmetric monomials in the "variables"  $A$ . Thus, a monomial in  $\text{Super}[A]$ , say  $a_1 a_2 \cdots a_k$ , satisfies the relation  $a_1 a_2 \cdots a_k = \text{sgn}(\sigma) a_{\sigma_1} a_{\sigma_2} \cdots a_{\sigma_k}$  where  $\sigma$  is any permutation of  $\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ .

(3) If  $A = A^+$ , then  $\text{Super}[A]$  is the divided powers algebra  $\text{Divp}[A]$  generated by the set  $A$ . We recall that, in characteristic zero (that is, over the field  $\mathbf{Q}$  of rational numbers), the divided power  $a^{(i)}$  can be identified with  $a^i/i!$ .

We omit the proof of the following two elementary facts.

**PROPOSITION 1.** An injection  $f: B \rightarrow A$  induces an isomorphism

$$\hat{f}: \text{Super}[B] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A].$$

**PROPOSITION 2.** For any signed set  $A$ , we have a natural isomorphism of  $\text{Super}[A]$  with the tensor product

$$\text{Divp}[A^+] \otimes \text{Wedge}[A^-] \otimes \text{Symm}[A^0].$$



It follows from Proposition 2 that if  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_r$  are distinct elements in  $A^+$ ,  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_s$  are distinct elements in  $A^-$ , and  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_u$  are distinct elements in  $A^0$ , then  $a_1^{(e_1)} a_2^{(e_2)} \dots a_r^{(e_r)} b_1 b_2 \dots b_s c_1^{m_1} c_2^{m_2} \dots c_u^{m_u}$  is a nonzero element in Super[A].

In addition, all elements of the above form constitute a basis for Super[A].

### 3. Tensor products.

PROPOSITION 3. *Let A and B be disjoint signed sets. Then the Z-modules Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B] and Super[A  $\oplus$  B] are isomorphic.*

PROOF. By Proposition 1, we may consider Super[A] and Super[B] as subsets of Super[A  $\oplus$  B]. Then, the multiplication map

$$\text{Super}[A] \times \text{Super}[B] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A \oplus B],$$

$(u, v) \rightarrow uv$ , gives a mapping  $\phi$  from Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B] onto Super[A  $\oplus$  B].

Clearly, a monomial in Super[A] can be written in many ways as a product of letters in  $A_d^+$ ,  $A^-$ , and  $A^0$ . We call such a monomial "canonical" if it has the form

$$a_1^{(e_1)} a_2^{(e_2)} \dots a_r^{(e_r)} b_1 b_2 \dots b_s c_1^{m_1} c_2^{m_2} \dots c_u^{m_u},$$

where the  $a_i$  are distinct elements in  $A^+$ , the  $b_i$  are distinct elements in  $A^-$ , and the  $c_i$  are distinct elements in  $A^0$ . Such monomials span the module Super[A]. Similarly, canonical monomials span the module Super[B].

To show that the mapping  $\phi$  is one-to-one, suppose that  $\phi(\sum_{i=1}^n c_i r_i \otimes s_i) = 0$ , where  $c_i \in \mathbf{Z}$ ,  $r_i$  is a canonical monomial in Super[A], and  $s_i$  is a canonical monomial in Super[B]. As remarked in §2, we may assume that all  $r_i s_i$  have the same content. But then  $r_1 = \pm r_2 = \dots = \pm r_n$ ,  $s_1 = \pm s_2 = \dots = \pm s_n$  so that  $n-1$ . But  $\phi(r \otimes s) = rs \neq 0$  as remarked above. This completes the proof.

Since Super[A  $\oplus$  B] is an algebra, we may use the isomorphism of the preceding proposition to define a multiplication on the tensor product Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B]. Namely, if

$$r = \sum_i c_i w_i \otimes w'_i \quad \text{and} \quad s = \sum_j d_j w_j \otimes w'_j,$$

then set

$$rs = \sum_{i,j} c_i d_j \text{sign}(|w'_i| |w_j|) w_i w_j \otimes w'_i w'_j.$$

Note that the module structure on Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B] agrees with the usual tensor product module structure. But, the multiplication on Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B] is not the usual multiplication on the tensor product, because of notable differences in sign.

Some consequences of the preceding proposition will be frequently used below. First, let  $r$  be a monomial in Super[A] and  $s$  be a monomial in Super[B]. We may then define  $|r \otimes s|$  to be  $|r| + |s|$  and  $\text{Cont}(r \otimes s) = \text{Cont}(r) * \text{Cont}(s)$ .

Second, let  $A, B$ , and  $C$  be mutually disjoint signed sets. The  $\mathbf{Z}$ -module Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B]  $\otimes$  Super[C] can be made into an algebra through its identification with either Super[A  $\oplus$  B]  $\otimes$  Super[C] or Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[B  $\oplus$  C]. In either case we have

$$(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes w_3)(w'_1 \otimes w'_2 \otimes w'_3) = \varepsilon w_1 w'_1 \otimes w_2 w'_2 \otimes w_3 w'_3,$$

where  $\varepsilon = \text{sign}(|w_2| |w'_1| + |w_3| |w'_1| + |w_3| |w'_2|)$ . Also,  $|w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes w_3| = |w_1| + |w_2| + |w_3|$ .

Third, we may define a multiplication on the  $\mathbf{Z}$ -module Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[A] by (the device of) viewing  $B$  as a set isomorphic to but disjoint from  $A$  and proceeding as above to get

$$(w_1 \otimes w_2)(w'_1 \otimes w'_2) = \text{sign}(|w_2| |w'_1|) w_1 w'_1 \otimes w_2 w'_2.$$

Again,  $|w_1 \otimes w_2| = |w_1| + |w_2|$ . Similarly, we may define a multiplication on Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[A]  $\otimes$  Super[A] (and longer tensor products) getting formulas similar to the above.

4. The coproduct  $\Delta$ . Let  $A$  be a signed set. We define an algebra homomorphism  $\phi: \text{Tens}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  as follows:

- (a)  $\phi(1) = 1 \otimes 1$ ,
- (b) if  $a \in A^- \cup A^0$ , set  $\phi(a) = 1 \otimes a + a \otimes 1$ ,
- (c) if  $a \in A^+$ , set  $\phi(a^{(n)}) = 1 \otimes a^{(n)} + a^{(1)} \otimes a^{(n-1)} + a^{(2)} \otimes a^{(n-2)} + \dots + a^{(n-1)} \otimes a^{(1)} + a^{(n)} \otimes 1$ .

If  $u$  is a word in Tens[A], observe that  $\phi(u)$  is a sum of terms each of which has parity  $|u|$ . We shall sometimes write  $|\phi(u)| = |u|$ .

We next show that  $\phi$  sends  $I_A$  to 0. Let  $u, v$  be words in Tens[A], say  $u = x_1 x_2 \dots x_n$  and  $v = y_1 y_2 \dots y_m$ . We show that  $\phi$  sends  $uv - \text{sign}(|u| |v|)vu$  to 0. Now,  $\phi(u) = \phi(x_1)\phi(x_2) \dots \phi(x_n)$  is a sum of terms  $r \otimes s$  each of parity

$$|u| = |x_1| + |x_2| + \dots + |x_n| = |r \otimes s| = |r| + |s|.$$

Similarly,  $\phi(v)$  is a sum of terms  $r' \otimes s'$  each of parity

$$|v| = |y_1| + |y_2| + \dots + |y_m| = |r' \otimes s'| = |r'| + |s'|.$$

Therefore,  $\phi(uv - \text{sign}(|u| |v|)vu)$  is a sum of terms of the following forms:

$$\begin{aligned} & (r \otimes s)(r' \otimes s') - \text{sign}(|u| |v|)(r' \otimes s')(r \otimes s) \\ &= \text{sign}(|r'| |s|) r r' \otimes s s' - \text{sign}(|u| |v| + |s'| |r|) r' r \otimes s' s \\ &= (\text{sign}(|r'| |s|) - \text{sign}(|u| |v| + |s'| |r| + |r'| |r| + |s'| |s|)) r r' \otimes s s' \\ &= (\text{sign}(|r'| |s|) - \text{sign}(|r'| |s|)) r r' \otimes s s' = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Second, observe that if  $a \in A^-$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(a^2) &= \phi(a)\phi(a) = (1 \otimes a + a \otimes 1)(1 \otimes a + a \otimes 1) \\ &= 1 \otimes a^2 - a \otimes a + a \otimes a + a^2 \otimes 1 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Third, let us show that  $\phi(a^{(i)}a^{(j)}) = \binom{i+j}{i}\phi(a^{(i+j)})$ . Let  $n = i + j$ . Then  $\phi(a^{(i)}a^{(j)})$  equals

$$[a^{(i)} \otimes 1 + a^{(i-1)} \otimes a + \cdots + 1 \otimes a^{(i)}][a^{(j)} \otimes 1 + a^{(j-1)} \otimes a + \cdots + 1 \otimes a^{(j)}],$$

which is a sum of terms of the form

$$\binom{n-k-l}{i-k} \binom{k+l}{k} a^{(n-k-l)} \otimes a^{(k+l)},$$

where  $k = 0, \dots, i$  and  $l = 0, \dots, j$ . The coefficient of a term  $a^{(n-u)} \otimes a^{(u)}$  is (easily) seen to be  $\binom{n}{i}$ .

Since  $\phi$  sends the generators of  $I_A$  to 0, it sends  $I_A$  to 0 and defines an algebra homomorphism  $\Delta: \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  such that:

- (a)  $\Delta(1) = 1 \otimes 1$ ,
- (b)  $\Delta(a) = 1 \otimes a + a \otimes 1$  if  $a \in A^-$  or  $a \in A^0$ ,
- (c)  $\Delta(a^{(n)}) = a^{(n)} \otimes 1 + a^{(n-1)} \otimes a + \cdots + 1 \otimes a^{(n)}$  if  $a \in A^+$ .

If  $u$  is a word in  $\text{Super}[A]$ , then  $\Delta u$  is a sum of terms of the form  $r \otimes s$ , say,  $\Delta u = r_1 \otimes s_1 + r_2 \otimes s_2 + \cdots + r_p \otimes s_p$ .

We shall denote this series by the *Sweedler notation*,

$$\Delta u = \sum_u u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}.$$

We turn to the question of uniqueness in this expansion.

**PROPOSITION 4.** *Let  $\pi: \text{Tens}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A]$  be the natural mapping. Then the mapping  $\pi \otimes \pi: \text{Tens}[A] \otimes \text{Tens}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  has kernel  $J_A = I_A \otimes \text{Tens}[A] + \text{Tens}[A] \otimes I_A$ .*

**PROOF.** Clearly  $J_A \subset \ker(\pi \otimes \pi)$ . By Proposition 2, we may choose elements  $e_1, e_2, \dots$  in  $\text{Tens}[A]$  so that  $\pi(e_1), \pi(e_2), \dots$  is a basis for  $\text{Super}[A]$ . Hence, each element in  $\text{Tens}[A]$  has the form  $a + c_1 e_1 + \cdots + c_n e_n$  where  $a \in I_A$  and  $c_j \in \mathbf{Z}$ . If  $v \in \text{Tens}[A] \otimes \text{Tens}[A]$  but  $v \notin J_A$ , then  $v = a + \sum c_{ij} e_i \otimes e_j$  where  $a \in J_A$ ,  $c_{ij} \in \mathbf{Z}$ , and some  $c_{ij} \neq 0$ . But then  $\pi(v) = \sum c_{ij} \pi(e_i) \otimes \pi(e_j) \neq 0$ .

The same reasoning shows that the kernel of  $\pi \otimes \cdots \otimes \pi$  ( $n$ -times):  $\text{Tens}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \text{Tens}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  is  $I_A \otimes \text{Tens}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \text{Tens}[A] + \text{Tens}[A] \otimes I_A \otimes \text{Tens}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \text{Tens}[A] + \cdots + \text{Tens}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \text{Tens}[A] \otimes I_A$ .

Let  $m$  be a multiset on  $A$ ; let  $\text{Tens}_m[A]$  be the submodule of  $\text{Tens}[A]$  spanned by 0 and all words  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$  such that  $\text{Cont}(w) = m$ . Then,  $\text{Tens}[A]$  is the direct sum of all the  $\text{Tens}_m[A]$ . Furthermore,  $I_A$  is the direct sum of all the  $I_m = I_A \cap \text{Tens}_m[A]$  (as remarked in §2). Next, let  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  be multisets on  $A$  and set  $T(m_1, m_2) = \text{Tens}_{m_1}[A] \otimes \text{Tens}_{m_2}[A]$ . Then,  $\text{Tens}[A] \otimes \text{Tens}[A]$  is the direct sum of the modules  $T(m_1, m_2)$  as  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  range over all multisets in  $A$ . Furthermore,  $J_A = I_A \otimes \text{Tens}[A] + \text{Tens}[A] \otimes I_A$  is the direct sum of all the modules  $J(m_1, m_2) = J_A \cap T(m_1, m_2)$ .

Now, let  $u$  be a word in  $\text{Super}[A]$ . By the definition of  $\Delta$ , we see that in  $\Delta u = \sum u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}$ , the monomials  $u_{(1)}, u_{(2)}$  may be chosen so that  $\text{Cont}(u_{(1)}) +$

$\text{Cont}(u_{(2)}) = \text{Cont}(u)$  for each term  $u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}$ . Let  $\Delta u = \sum v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)}$  be another representation of  $\Delta u$  where the  $v_{(1)}, v_{(2)}$  are words. Then, in  $\text{Tens}[A] \otimes \text{Tens}[A]$ ,

$$\sum u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)} = \sum v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)} + j,$$

where  $j$  is an element in the ideal  $J_A = I_A \otimes \text{Tens}[A] + \text{Tens}[A] \otimes I_A$ . Comparing contents on both sides of this equation, we see that those terms  $v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)}$  with  $\text{Cont}(v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)}) \neq \text{Cont}(u)$  must be in  $J_A$  and have image 0 under  $\pi \otimes \pi$ . So, these terms can be omitted from any expression for  $\Delta u$ . With this convention, we see that any representation of  $\Delta u$  as a sum of terms  $u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}$  satisfies  $\text{Cont}(u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}) = \text{Cont}(u_{(1)}) + \text{Cont}(u_{(2)}) = \text{Cont}(u)$ . Similarly, we may suppose that  $\text{Length}(u_{(1)}) + \text{Length}(u_{(2)}) = \text{Length}(u)$  and  $|u_{(1)}| + |u_{(2)}| = |u|$ .

**5. The Coassociative Law.** Let  $A$  be a signed set. Then the homomorphisms  $1 \otimes \Delta$  and  $\Delta \otimes 1$  both send  $\text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  to  $\text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A]$ .

**PROPOSITION 5 (COASSOCIATIVE LAW).** *Let  $A$  be a signed set. The homomorphisms  $(1 \otimes \Delta) \cdot \Delta$  and  $(\Delta \otimes 1) \cdot \Delta$  from  $\text{Super}[A]$  to  $\text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  coincide.*

**PROOF.** Let  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$ , with  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$ . We show by induction on  $\text{Length } w$  that  $(\Delta \otimes 1)(\Delta w) = (1 \otimes \Delta)\Delta w$ . If  $\text{Length } w = 1$ , this equality follows from the definition of  $\Delta$  by a simple calculation.

Now, suppose that  $\text{Length}(w) = n > 1$  and that equality holds for all words of  $\text{Length} < n$ . If  $w = a^{(n)}$ , then one may check that

$$(\Delta \otimes 1)(\Delta w) = (1 \otimes \Delta)(\Delta w) = \sum a^{(i)} \otimes a^{(j)} \otimes a^{(k)},$$

where the sum ranges over all nonnegative integers  $i, j, k$  such that  $i + j + k = n$ . Otherwise,  $w = uv$  where both  $u$  and  $v$  have  $\text{Length} < n$ . Write

$$\Delta u = \sum_u u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)} \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta v = \sum_v v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)}.$$

By the induction hypothesis

$$(1) \sum_u \Delta u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)} = \sum_u u_{(1)} \otimes \Delta u_{(2)}$$

and

$$(2) \sum_v \Delta v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)} = \sum_v v_{(1)} \otimes \Delta v_{(2)}.$$

Now,

$$\Delta w = \Delta u \Delta v = \sum_{u,v} \text{sign}(|u_{(2)}| |v_{(1)}|) u_{(1)} v_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)} v_{(2)}.$$

Hence,

$$(\Delta \otimes 1)\Delta w = \sum_{u,v} \text{sign}(|u_{(2)}| |v_{(1)}|) \Delta(u_{(1)} v_{(1)}) \otimes u_{(2)} v_{(2)},$$

and

$$(1 \otimes \Delta)\Delta w = \sum_{u,v} \text{sign}(|u_{(2)}| |v_{(1)}|) u_{(1)} v_{(1)} \otimes \Delta(u_{(2)} v_{(2)}).$$

These two previous expressions are equal as follows from multiplying (1) and (2) and recalling that  $|\Delta v_{(1)}| = |v_{(1)}|$  and  $|\Delta u_{(2)}| = |u_{(2)}|$ . This completes the proof.

Next, define algebra homomorphisms  $\varepsilon: \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  and  $S: \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A]$  as follows:  $\varepsilon(w) = 1$  if  $\text{Length}(w) = 0$  and  $\varepsilon(w) = 0$  if  $\text{Length}(w) > 0$ ;  $S(w) = \text{sign}(\text{Length}(w))w$ . These maps along with  $\Delta$  give  $\text{Super}[A]$  the structure of a Hopf algebra. In other words, the following diagrams are commutative:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{Super}[A] & & \\ & \swarrow \text{id} & \downarrow \Delta & \searrow \text{id} & \\ \mathbf{Z} \otimes \text{Super}[A] & \xleftarrow{\varepsilon \otimes 1} & \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A] & \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \varepsilon} & \text{Super}[A] \otimes \mathbf{Z} \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{Super}[A] & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A] \\ & \swarrow \varepsilon & \downarrow S & & \downarrow S \otimes S \\ \mathbf{Z} & & \text{Super}[A] & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A] \\ & \searrow \varepsilon & & & \end{array}$$

Lastly, we define a sequence of algebra homomorphisms  $\Delta^{(n)}: \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \text{Super}[A]$  ( $n$ -times) by repeatedly using the Coassociative Law. Set  $\Delta^{(1)} = \text{id}$ ,  $\Delta^{(2)} = \Delta$ ,  $\Delta^{(3)} = (1 \otimes \Delta) \cdot \Delta = (\Delta \otimes 1) \cdot \Delta$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\Delta^{(n)} = (1 \otimes \Delta) \cdot \Delta^{(n-1)}$ . We conclude with a property of the antipode  $S(w)$  which will be used repeatedly in Chapter 3.

**PROPOSITION 6.** *Let  $w$  be a word in  $\text{Div}(A)$ . Let  $\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$ . Then  $\sum_w w_{(1)} S(w_{(2)}) = \varepsilon(w)$ .*

**PROOF.** We use induction on  $\text{Length}(w)$ ; the case  $\text{Length}(w) \leq 1$  follows at once from the definitions. In general, if  $w = a^{(n)}$ , then  $\Delta w = \sum_{i=0}^n a^{(i)} \otimes a^{(n-i)}$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_w w_{(1)} S(w_{(2)}) &= \sum_{i=0}^n \text{sign}(n-i) a^{(i)} a^{(n-i)} \\ &= a^{(n)} \sum_{i=0}^n \text{sign}(n-i) \binom{n}{i} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Otherwise,  $w = w'w''$  where  $\text{Length}(w') < n$  and  $\text{Length}(w'') < n$ . Let us omit

the parentheses and write

$$\Delta(w') = \sum_{w'} w'_1 \otimes w'_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta(w'') = \sum_{w''} w''_1 \otimes w''_2.$$

Then,

$$\Delta(w) = \Delta(w')\Delta(w'') = \sum \text{sign}(|w'_2| |w''_1|) w'_1 w''_1 \otimes w'_2 w''_2.$$

So,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_w w_{(1)} S(w_{(2)}) &= \sum \text{sign}(|w'_2| |w''_1| + \text{Length}(w'_2 w''_2)) w'_1 w''_1 w'_2 w''_2 \\ &= \sum w'_1 \text{sign}(\text{Length}(w'_2)) w'_2 w''_1 \text{sign}(\text{Length}(w''_2)) w''_2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

## 2. Laplace Pairings

**0. Introduction.** In this chapter we introduce a far-reaching generalization of the classical notion of the determinant of a matrix. By way of motivation, we review the ordinary determinant in the present notation.

Suppose we are given a matrix whose rows are labeled  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , where  $x_i \in L^-$  and where  $L$  is a proper signed set, and whose columns are labeled  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ , where  $\alpha_i \in P^-$  and where  $P$  is another proper signed set. The entries of the matrix are denoted by  $(x_i | \alpha_j)$ ; we consider them as neutral elements of another (improper!) signed set  $[L | P]$ . Since neutral elements behave like "scalars," that is  $(x_i | \alpha_i) \in [L | P]^0$ , we operate with the "variables"  $(x_i | \alpha_i)$  as we do with ordinary numbers.

We denote the determinant of the matrix  $(x_i | \alpha_i)$  by the expression

$$(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n).$$

Again,  $x_1 \cdots x_n \in \text{Div}[L^-]$  and  $\alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_n \in \text{Div}[P^-]$ . In the case at hand, we can define the determinant by the classical formula

$$\begin{aligned} (*) \quad (x_1 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_n) &= \sum_{\sigma} \pm (x_{\sigma_1} | \alpha_1) (x_{\sigma_2} | \alpha_2) \cdots (x_{\sigma_n} | \alpha_n) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma} \pm (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1}) (x_2 | \alpha_{\sigma_2}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}); \end{aligned}$$

however, we shall follow another more circuitous route for what seems like an obvious definition. Let us recall the Laplace expansion of a determinant (by rows first) and express it in the present notation. Using the notation of Hopf algebras developed in the preceding chapter, set

$$x_1 \cdots x_i = u, \quad x_{i+1} \cdots x_n = u', \quad \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_n = w.$$

One can then verify that a Laplace expansion by rows can be elegantly rewritten (forgetting about the signs for the moment) as

$$(**) \quad (uu' | w) = \sum_w \pm (u | w_{(1)}) (u' | w_{(2)}).$$

A similar identity holds for Laplace expansions by columns.

Multiple Laplace expansions can be similarly expressed. On the right side of (\*\*), expand  $(u | w_{(i)})$  by a further Laplace expansion, say writing  $u = u''u'''$ , thus:

$$(u | w_{(1)}) = (u''u''' | w_{(1)}) = \sum_{w_{(1)}} \pm(u'' | w_{(11)})(u''' | w_{(12)}).$$

Substituting in (\*\*), we obtain

$$(uu' | w) = \sum_w \sum_{w_{(i)}} \pm(u'' | w_{(11)})(u''' | w_{(12)})(u' | w_{(2)}).$$

Using the Coassociative Law of the coproduct, the right side can be rewritten in the form

$$\sum_w \pm(u'' | w_{(1)})(u''' | w_{(2)})(u' | w_{(3)}),$$

and it can be verified that the double Laplace expansion is consistent; that is, the same expression would have been obtained by expanding  $(u' | w_{(2)})$  first. Thus, by a succession of iterated Laplace expansions, we eventually arrive at the ordinary expression (\*) for the determinant, and it does not matter in what order we take our Laplace expansions. In other words, the fact that the determinant is well defined is tantamount to verifying that the order in which successive Laplace expansions of minors is carried out is immaterial, and all lead eventually to (\*).

In the present content, we wish to generalize the notion of determinant by allowing  $x_i \in L^+ \cup L^-$  and  $\alpha_j \in P^+ \cup P^-$ . Specifically, we wish to define a *biproduct*  $(w | u)$  where  $w$  is any word in  $\text{Div}[L]$  and  $u$  any word in  $\text{Div}[P]$ , positive or negative. One cannot do this by generalizing (\*), because the algebraic properties of the divided powers  $x^{(i)}$  for  $x \in L^+$  all but force the definition

$$(x^{(i)} | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_i) = (x | \alpha_1)(x | \alpha_2) \cdots (x | \alpha_i),$$

where  $\alpha_i \in P^-$ , and  $(x^{(i)} | \alpha^{(i)}) = (x | \alpha)^{(i)}$  where  $\alpha \in P^+$ . We must resort therefore to another device: we define symbols  $(w | u)$  and subject them to suitable generalizations of the Laplace expansions which take the varying signs into account. The problem is then that of proving that successive Laplace expansions can be carried out in any order, giving a consistent result. This is, in brief, the content of the present chapter. The assignment of signs is carried out by a simple idea. A biproduct  $(w | u)$  is given the sign  $|w| + |u|$ . Two biproducts commute if not both of them have negative signs and anticommute if both have negative signs. One carries out a Laplace expansion by noting the number of commutations of negative letters in the biproducts that are necessary to carry out the expansion. For example, if  $x, y \in L^+$  and  $\alpha, \beta \in P^-$  and we want to expand the biproduct  $(xy | \alpha\beta)$ , we may choose to expand it by "rows" and obtain  $(x | \alpha)(y | \beta) + (y | \alpha)(x | \beta)$ ; here all the signs are positive because  $x$  and  $y$  have been permuted in the expansion, and they are both positive. In other words, all the signs are + because no pairs of negative entries have been permuted. On the other hand, we may choose to expand by "columns" and then obtain

$(x | \alpha)(y | \beta) - (x | \beta)(y | \alpha)$ . Here, the minus sign arises from the fact that two negatively signed elements, namely  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , have been permuted. Because  $(x | \beta)$  and  $(y | \alpha)$  are negatively signed, we have  $(x | \beta)(y | \alpha) = -(y | \alpha)(x | \beta)$ , and the two expressions coincide, giving a consistent definition.

The basic rule for Laplace expansions is the following: if  $u = u'u''$  then

$$(w | u'u'') = \sum_w \text{sign}(|w_{(2)}| |u'|)(w_{(1)} | u')(w_{(2)} | u'').$$

The "reason" for the sign can be viewed as follows. In passing from  $(w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)} | u' \otimes u'')$  to  $(w_{(1)} | u')(w_{(2)} | u'')$  one "commutes" the words  $w_{(2)}$  and  $u'$ .

There is a dual rule when the roles of  $w$  and  $u$  are exchanged.

The resulting definition of a biproduct  $(w | u)$  includes not only the ordinary determinant, when all letters in  $w$  and  $u$  are negatively signed, and the permanent, which occurs when all letters in both  $w$  and  $u$  are positively signed and *distinct*, but also a characteristic-free generalization of the permanent, which occurs when all letters in both  $w$  and  $u$  are positively signed but not necessarily distinct.

The most interesting new special case, however, occurs when all letters in  $w$  are positively signed and all letters in  $u$  are negatively signed. We obtain then a generalization on the notion of determinant (foreshadowed, but only in characteristic zero, by Doubilet and Rota) which, as we shall see, plays a role at least as great as that of Cayley's "bracket" in invariant theory. The results in this chapter are believed to be new and are published here for the first time. The notion of Laplace pairing can be given in a more general context of Hopf algebras, but we have deliberately restricted the exposition to the cases needed in invariant theory.

**1. The fourfold algebra.** Let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint proper signed sets (so that  $L^0 = P^0 = \emptyset$ ). We shall call the elements of  $L$  *letters* and the elements of  $P$  *places*. We define a new signed set, which is not proper, by  $[L | P] = \{(x | \alpha) : x \in L, \alpha \in P\}$ . Here, the elements of  $[L | P]$  are denoted by symbols  $(x | \alpha)$ . The positive, neutral, and negative elements in  $[L | P]$  are defined as follows:

- (i) if  $x \in L^+, \alpha \in P^+$ , then  $(x | \alpha) \in [L | P]^+$ ;
- (ii) if  $x \in L^-, \alpha \in P^-$ , then  $(x | \alpha) \in [L | P]^0$ ;
- (iii) otherwise,  $(x | \alpha) \in [L | P]^-$ .

The  $\mathbf{Z}$ -algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  will be called the *fourfold algebra*. By Propositions 2 and 3, we have an isomorphism of the fourfold algebra with the fourfold tensor product.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Super}[L | P] = & \text{Super}[L^- | P^-] \otimes \text{Super}[L^- | P^+] \\ & \otimes \text{Super}[L^+ | P^-] \otimes \text{Super}[L^+ | P^+]. \end{aligned}$$

In the fourfold algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  we have  $(x | \alpha)(y | \beta) = \pm(y | \beta)(x | \alpha)$  with a minus sign only when exactly one of  $x$  and  $\alpha$  is negative and exactly one of  $y$  and  $\beta$  is negative. We shall use this fact often in what follows.

**2. The Laplace pairing.** Let  $A$  be any signed set. If  $k \in \mathbf{Z}^+$ , we denote by  $\text{Tens}_k[A]$  the submodule of  $\text{Tens}[A]$  spanned by 0 and all  $w \in \text{Div}(A)$  such that  $\text{Length}(w) = k$ , and similarly we define  $\text{Super}_k[A]$ .

Let  $L$  and  $P$  be proper signed sets. For  $k, l \in \mathbf{Z}^+$  we define a bilinear mapping  $\Omega$  from  $\text{Super}_k[L] \times \text{Super}_l[P]$  to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . This will be done by first defining a mapping, which we also denote by  $\Omega$ , from  $\text{Tens}_k[L] \times \text{Tens}_l[P]$  to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ , and then by verifying that the required conditions are satisfied to induce a bilinear mapping on the superalgebras. The bilinear mapping  $\Omega$  is defined by the following rules:

*Rule 1.* If  $k \neq l$ , then  $\Omega \equiv 0$ .

For  $k = l = n$ , say, we define  $\Omega$  inductively. It suffices to define  $\Omega(w, u)$  for words  $w$  and  $u$ . We shall denote  $\Omega(w, u)$  by  $(w | u)$ , and we call  $(w | u)$  the *biproduct* of  $w$  and  $u$ .

In the inductive definition of  $\Omega$ , we shall check that the following two conditions hold at each step  $n$ .

(i) If  $w \in I_L$  and  $u \in \text{Tens}_n[P]$ , then  $\Omega(w, u) = 0$ . If  $u \in I_P$  and  $w \in \text{Tens}_n[L]$ , then  $\Omega(w, u) = 0$ .

(ii) (Commutation rule for biproducts) Let  $w, w', u, u'$  be words of  $\text{Length} \leq n$ . Then

$$(w | u)(w' | u') = \varepsilon(w' | u')(w | u),$$

where  $\varepsilon = \text{sign}(|w'| |u| + |w'| |w| + |u'| |u| + |u'| |w|)$ .

*Rule 2.*  $(1 | 1) = 1$ .

*Rule 3.* For  $x \in L, \alpha \in P$  set  $\Omega(x, \alpha) = (x | \alpha)$ .

Condition (i) holds for  $n = 0, 1$  since nonzero elements in  $I_L$  or  $I_P$  are sums of words having  $\text{Length} \geq 2$ . Condition (ii) holds for  $n = 0, 1$  as remarked at the end of §1.

Suppose that  $\Omega$  has been defined on  $\text{Tens}_k[L] \times \text{Tens}_k[P]$  for  $k < n$  in such a way that conditions (i) and (ii) hold. We then define  $\Omega$  on  $\text{Tens}_n[L] \times \text{Tens}_n[P]$  by the following three rules:

*Rule 4.*  $(x^{(n)} | \alpha^{(n)}) = (x | \alpha)^{(n)}$ .

*Rule 5.*  $(w | u'u'') = \sum_w \text{sign}(|w_{(2)} ||u'|)(w_{(1)} | u')(w_{(2)} | u'')$ ,  
where  $\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$ .

*Rule 6.*  $(w'w'' | u) = \sum_u \text{sign}(|w'' | |u_{(1)}|)(w' | u_{(1)})(w'' | u_{(2)})$ ,  
where  $\Delta u = \sum_u u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}$ .

We now check that these rules give a consistent definition of  $\Omega$  and then that conditions (i) and (ii) hold. To show that  $\Omega$  is well defined, we need to establish the following facts.

(1) Rule 5 does not depend on the representation of  $\Delta w$  as a sum,  $\sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$ . Rule 6 does not depend on the representation of  $\Delta u$ .

(2) Rule 5 does not depend on the particular factorization of  $u = u'u''$ .

Rule 6 does not depend on the particular factorization of  $w = w'w''$ .

(3) In computing  $(ww' | uu')$  the same answer is arrived at whether Rule 5 or Rule 6 is applied.

**PROOF OF (1).** We prove (1) for Rule 5, the proof for Rule 6 being similar. We begin by noting that since condition (i) holds, we may view  $w$  and  $u$  as elements of  $\text{Super}[L]$  and  $\text{Super}[P]$ , respectively, when writing  $(w | u)$ . Thus, the expressions  $(w_{(1)} | u')$  and  $(w_{(2)} | u'')$  are well defined.

Let  $\text{Length}(u') = k_1 < n$  and  $\text{Length}(u'') = k_2 < n$ . Then  $u'$  defines a linear mapping  $\text{Tens}[L] \rightarrow \text{Super}[L | P], w \rightarrow (w | u')$ . Similarly,  $u''$  defines a linear mapping  $\text{Tens}[L] \rightarrow \text{Super}[L | P]$  by  $w \rightarrow (w | u'')$ . These two linear mappings in turn define a linear map from  $\text{Tens}[L] \otimes \text{Tens}[L]$  to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  by  $w_1 \otimes w_2 \rightarrow (w_1 | u')(w_2 | u'')$ .

Now let  $\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)} = \sum_w v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)}$  be two representations of  $\Delta w$ . We apply the remarks following Proposition 4. Considering these representations as elements in  $\text{Tens}[L] \otimes \text{Tens}[L]$ , we may equate terms in  $T(m_1, m_2)$  where  $m_1, m_2$  are any two given multisets on  $L$ . Then, there is an element  $j \in J_L \cap T(m_1, m_2)$  so that

$$\sum_w' (w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}) = \sum_w' v_{(1)} \otimes v_{(2)} + j,$$

where the sums are restricted to terms in  $T(m_1, m_2)$ . Applying the linear mapping defined by  $u'$  and  $u''$  to the equation above and recalling condition (i), we see that

$$\sum_w' (w_{(1)} | u')(w_{(2)} | u'') = \sum_w' (v_{(1)} | u')(v_{(2)} | u'').$$

Since  $m_2$  is the content of each  $w_{(2)}$  and  $v_{(2)}$ , we may multiply this equation by  $\text{sign}(|u' | w_{(2)}|)$ . This completes the proof of (1).

**PROOF OF (2).** To prove (2) for Rule 5, we shall show that  $(w | (ab)c) = (w | a(bc))$ . First, we recall that if  $\Delta w = \sum w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} (\Delta \otimes 1)(\Delta w) &= \sum \Delta w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)} = \sum w_{(11)} \otimes w_{(12)} \otimes w_{(2)} \\ &= (1 \otimes \Delta)(\Delta w) = \sum w_{(1)} \otimes \Delta w_{(2)} \\ &= \sum w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(21)} \otimes w_{(22)}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} (w | (ab)c) &= \sum_w \text{sign}(|ab | w_{(2)}|)(w_{(1)} | ab)(w_{(2)} | c) \\ &= \sum_w \text{sign}(|ab | w_{(2)}| + |a | w_{(12)}|)(w_{(11)} | a)(w_{(12)} | b)(w_{(2)} | c). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} (w | a(bc)) &= \sum_w \text{sign}(|a | w_{(2)}|)(w_{(1)} | a)(w_{(2)} | bc) \\ &= \sum_w \text{sign}(|a | w_{(2)}| + |b | w_{(22)}|)(w_{(1)} | a)(w_{(21)} | b)(w_{(22)} | c). \end{aligned}$$

To see that these expressions are equal, let us change notation and set  $\Delta^{(3)}w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)} \otimes w_{(3)}$ . Each of the expressions above has the form (\*)

$$\sum_w \text{sign}(|a | w_{(2)}| + |a | w_{(3)}| + |b | w_{(3)}|)(w_{(1)} | a)(w_{(2)} | b)(w_{(3)} | c)$$

since  $|w_{(2)}| = |w_{(21)}| + |w_{(22)}|$ . But an argument just as in the proof of (1) shows that (\*) does not depend on the representation of  $\Delta^{(3)}w$ .

PROOF OF (3). In computing  $(ww' | uu')$  we may apply Rule 5 or Rule 6. Let us begin by using Rule 5. Then

$$(ww' | uu') = \sum \text{sign}(|u| |(ww')_{(2)}|) ((ww')_{(1)} | u) ((ww')_{(2)} | u').$$

If  $\Delta w = \sum w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$  and  $\Delta w' = \sum w'_{(1)} \otimes w'_{(2)}$ , then

$$\Delta(ww') = \Delta w \Delta w' = \sum \text{sign}(|w_{(2)}| |w'_{(1)}|) w_{(1)} w'_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)} w'_{(2)}.$$

Hence, applying Rule 6 we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (ww' | uu') &= \sum \text{sign}(|u| |w_{(2)}| + |u| |w'_{(2)}| + |w_{(2)}| |w'_{(1)}|) \\ &\quad \times (w_{(1)} w'_{(1)} | u) (w_{(2)} w'_{(2)} | u') \\ &= \sum \varepsilon (w_{(1)} | u_{(1)}) (w'_{(1)} | u_{(2)}) (w_{(2)} | u'_{(1)}) (w'_{(2)} | u'_{(2)}) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\varepsilon = \text{sign}(|u| |w_{(2)}| + |u| |w'_{(2)}| + |w_{(2)}| |w'_{(1)}| + |u_{(1)}| |w'_{(1)}| + |u'_{(1)}| |w'_{(2)}|).$$

Next, we begin with Rule 6. Then

$$(ww' | uu') = \sum \text{sign}(|(uu')_{(1)}| |w'|) (w | (uu')_{(1)}) (w | (uu')_{(2)}).$$

We calculate  $\Delta(uu') = \Delta u \Delta u'$  and then apply Rule 5 and condition (ii) to  $(w_{(2)} | u'_{(1)}) (w'_{(1)} | u_{(2)})$  to conclude the proof.

There are two useful formulas which follow by induction from these arguments.

(a)

$$(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_m | u) = \sum_u \text{sign} \left( \sum_{i>j} |x_i| |u_j| \right) (x_1 | u_{(1)}) (x_2 | u_{(2)}) \cdots (x_m | u_{(m)}),$$

where  $\Delta^{(m)}(u) = \sum_u u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)} \otimes \cdots \otimes u_{(m)}$ .

(b)

$$(x | u_1 u_2 \cdots u_m) = \sum_x \text{sign} \left( \sum_{i>j} |x_i| |u_j| \right) (x_{(1)} | u_1) (x_{(2)} | u_2) \cdots (x_{(m)} | u_m),$$

where  $\Delta^{(m)}(x) = \sum_x x_{(1)} \otimes x_{(2)} \otimes \cdots \otimes x_{(m)}$ .

PROOF OF CONDITION (i). We shall prove that if  $u \in I_P$  and if  $w$  is any word in  $\text{Tens}_n[L]$ , then  $\Omega(w, u) = 0$ . The other statement in (i) is proved in the same way. We may assume that  $u \in I_P \cap \text{Tens}_n[P]$  by Rule 1. If  $w$  factors, say  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_m$ , then we see that  $\Omega(w, u) = 0$  by applying formula (a) above since  $\Delta^{(m)}(u) = 0$  for  $m > 0$ . Otherwise,  $w = x^{(n)}$ . Let  $r, u, v, s$  be words in  $\text{Tens}[P]$  of lengths  $h, i, j, k$  so that  $h + i + j + k = n$ . Then, applying formula (b) and Rule 1, we see that

$$\Omega(x^{(n)}, ruvs) = (x^{(h)} | r) (x^{(i)} | u) (x^{(j)} | v) (x^{(k)} | s).$$

Also,

$$\Omega(x^{(n)}, rvus) = (x^{(h)} | r) (x^{(j)} | v) (x^{(i)} | u) (x^{(k)} | s)$$

and, applying the commutation rule for biproducts, we see that this is

$$\text{sign}(|u| |v|) (x^{(h)} | r) (x^{(i)} | u) (x^{(j)} | v) (x^{(k)} | s).$$

Therefore,

$$\Omega(x^{(n)}, ruvs - \text{sign}(|u| |v|) rvus) = 0.$$

Furthermore,

$$\begin{aligned} (x^{(n)} | r \alpha^{(i)} \alpha^{(j)} s) &= (x^{(h)} | r) (x^{(i)} | \alpha^{(i)}) (x^{(j)} | \alpha^{(j)}) (x^{(k)} | s) \\ &= (x^{(h)} | r) (x | \alpha)^{(i)} (x | \alpha)^{(j)} (x^{(k)} | s) \\ &= \binom{i+j}{i} (x^{(h)} | r) (x | \alpha)^{(i+j)} (x^{(k)} | s) \\ &= (x^{(n)} | r \binom{i+j}{i} \alpha^{(i+j)} s). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, if  $u \in P^-$  then  $(x^{(n)} | ru^2 s) = (x^{(h)} | r) (x | u) (x | u) (x^{(k)} | s) = 0$ . This completes the proof of condition (i).

PROOF OF CONDITION (ii). If either  $(w | u)$  or  $(w' | u')$  is  $(x^{(n)} | \alpha^{(n)}) = (x | \alpha)^{(n)}$ , the condition holds since  $(x | \alpha)^{(n)}$  is in the center of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . Otherwise, we may apply Rules 5 and 6 and use the induction hypothesis. This completes the proof of condition (ii).

We have completed the argument showing that the bilinear mapping  $\Omega$  from  $\text{Tens}[L] \times \text{Tens}[P]$  to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  is well defined. In fact, since condition (i) holds, we may consider  $\Omega$  as a bilinear mapping from  $\text{Super}[L] \times \text{Super}[P]$  to  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ .

Notation. We shall denote  $\text{sign}(|w_{(2)}| |u'|) (w_{(1)} | u') (w_{(2)} | u'')$  by

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} w_{(1)} \\ w_{(2)} \end{array} \middle| \begin{array}{c} u' \\ u'' \end{array} \right)$$

and write Rule 5 as

$$(w | u' u'') = \sum_w \left( \begin{array}{c} w_{(1)} \\ w_{(2)} \end{array} \middle| \begin{array}{c} u' \\ u'' \end{array} \right).$$

Similarly, Rule 6 may be written as

$$(w' w'' | u) = \sum_u \left( \begin{array}{c} w' \\ w'' \end{array} \middle| \begin{array}{c} u_{(1)} \\ u_{(2)} \end{array} \right).$$

Extending this idea, we define the tableau

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|c} w_1 & u_1 \\ w_2 & u_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ w_n & u_n \end{array} \right)$$

to be sign  $(\sum_{i>j} |w_i| |u_j|)(w_1 | u_1)(w_2 | u_2) \cdots (w_n | u_n)$ . Formula (a) can then be written as

$$(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_m | u) = \sum_u \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & | & u_{(1)} \\ x_2 & | & u_{(2)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_m & | & u_{(m)} \end{pmatrix}$$

and formula (b) becomes

$$(x | u_1 u_2 \cdots u_m) = \sum_x \begin{pmatrix} x_{(1)} & | & u_1 \\ x_{(2)} & | & u_2 \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_{(m)} & | & u_m \end{pmatrix}$$

### 3. Examples.

EXAMPLE 1. Let us calculate  $(xy | \alpha\beta)$  where  $x, y \in L^+$  and  $\alpha, \beta \in P^-$ . First, we shall apply Rule 5. To use this, we begin by observing that

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta w &= \Delta x \Delta y = (1 \otimes x + x \otimes 1)(1 \otimes y + y \otimes 1) \\ &= 1 \otimes xy + x \otimes y + y \otimes x + xy \otimes 1. \end{aligned}$$

Then, Rule 5 along with Rule 1 gives

$$(xy | \alpha\beta) = (x | \alpha)(y | \beta) + (y | \alpha)(x | \beta).$$

Second, we shall do the same calculation but now using Rule 6. Here,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta u &= \Delta \alpha \Delta \beta = (1 \otimes \alpha + \alpha \otimes 1)(1 \otimes \beta + \beta \otimes 1) \\ &= 1 \otimes \alpha\beta + \alpha \otimes \beta - \beta \otimes \alpha + \alpha\beta \otimes 1. \end{aligned}$$

So,  $(xy | \alpha\beta) = (x | \alpha)(y | \beta) - (x | \beta)(y | \alpha)$  which, according to the commutation rule for biproducts, is  $(x | \alpha)(y | \beta) + (y | \alpha)(x | \beta)$ .

EXAMPLE 2. Let  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  and  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  be distinct elements in  $L^+$  and  $P^+$ , respectively. Then

$$(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) = \sum_{\sigma} (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1})(x_2 | \alpha_{\sigma_2}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}),$$

where  $\sigma$  ranges over all permutations of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

PROOF. The proof is by induction on  $n$  and we sketch the details. (It is similar to the complete argument given for Example 5.) In Rule 6, we take  $w' = x_1$  and  $w'' = x_2 x_3 \cdots x_n$ . Now

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) &= \alpha_1 \otimes \alpha_2 \alpha_3 \cdots \alpha_n + \alpha_2 \otimes \alpha_1 \hat{\alpha}_2 \alpha_3 \cdots \alpha_n \\ &\quad + \cdots + \alpha_n \otimes \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_{n-1} + (\text{terms of wrong length}). \end{aligned}$$

Here, the symbol  $\hat{\alpha}_i$  means  $\alpha_i$  is not included in the product. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} (x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) &= (x_1 | \alpha_1)(x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) \\ &\quad + (x_1 | \alpha_2)(x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \hat{\alpha}_2 \alpha_3 \cdots \alpha_n) \\ &\quad + \cdots + (x_1 | \alpha_n)(x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_{n-1}) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma} (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1})(x_2 | \alpha_{\sigma_2}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}), \end{aligned}$$

using the induction hypothesis. We call  $(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n)$  the *permanent* of  $x_i, \alpha_j$  and denote it by  $\text{perm}(x_i | \alpha_j)$ .

EXAMPLE 3. Let  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  and  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  be distinct elements in  $L^-$  and  $P^-$ , respectively. Then

$$(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_n \alpha_{n-1} \cdots \alpha_1) = \sum_{\sigma} \text{sgn } \sigma (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1})(x_2 | \alpha_{\sigma_2}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}),$$

where  $\sigma$  ranges over all permutations of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

PROOF. The proof is by induction on  $n$  and we sketch the details. We shall apply Rule 6 with  $w' = x_1$  and  $w'' = x_2 \cdots x_n$ , noting that  $|w''| = 0$  or  $1$  depending on whether  $n - 1$  is even or odd. Now

$$\Delta(\alpha_n \alpha_{n-1} \cdots \alpha_1) = \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{n-i} \alpha_i \otimes \alpha_n \alpha_{n-1} \cdots \hat{\alpha}_i \cdots \alpha_1 + \cdots$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} (x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_n \alpha_{n-1} \cdots \alpha_1) &= \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i-1} (x_1 | \alpha_i)(x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_n \cdots \hat{\alpha}_i \cdots \alpha_1) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma} \text{sgn } \sigma (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}). \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 4. Let  $x \in L^+$  and  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \in P^-$ . Then

$$(x^{(n)} | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) = (x | \alpha_1)(x | \alpha_2) \cdots (x | \alpha_n).$$

PROOF. The proof is by induction on  $n$ , the case  $n = 1$  being trivial. In general, we apply Rule 5 with  $u' = \alpha_1$  and  $u'' = \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n$ . We recall that  $\Delta x^{(n)} = \sum_{i=0}^n x^{(i)} \otimes x^{(n-i)}$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} (x^{(n)} | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) &= (x | \alpha_1)(x^{(n-1)} | \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) \\ &= (x | \alpha_1)(x | \alpha_2) \cdots (x | \alpha_n). \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 5 (DOUBILET-ROTA, 1976). Let  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n \in L^+$  and  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \in P^-$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n | \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) &= \sum_{\sigma} \text{sgn } \sigma (x_1 | \alpha_{\sigma_1})(x_2 | \alpha_{\sigma_2}) \cdots (x_n | \alpha_{\sigma_n}) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma} (x_{\sigma_1} | \alpha_1)(x_{\sigma_2} | \alpha_2) \cdots (x_{\sigma_n} | \alpha_n), \end{aligned}$$

where  $\sigma$  ranges over all permutations of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

PROOF. We shall prove the first equality by induction on  $n$ , applying Rule 6. The second equality is proved in a similar manner but by applying Rule 5. The case  $n = 1$  is trivial so we may suppose that the first equality holds for all positive integers  $< n$ . We now apply Rule 6 with  $w' = x_1$  and  $w'' = x_2 \cdots x_n$ . Now,

$$\Delta(\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i-1} \alpha_i \otimes \alpha_1 \cdots \hat{\alpha}_i \cdots \alpha_n + (\text{terms of wrong length}).$$



So,

$$\begin{aligned} & (x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n \mid \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i-1} (x_1 \mid \alpha_i) (x_2 \cdots x_n \mid \alpha_1 \cdots \hat{\alpha}_i \cdots \alpha_n) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i-1} (x_1 \mid \alpha_i) \sum_{\tau} (\operatorname{sgn} \tau) (x_2 \mid \alpha_{\tau 1}) \cdots (x_n \mid \alpha_{\tau n}), \end{aligned}$$

where the second sum on the right-hand side is over all permutations  $\tau$  of  $\{1, \dots, \hat{i}, \dots, n\}$ .

Let us put  $\sigma = \tau(1i)$ . We note that  $\sigma(1) = i$ . Furthermore, as  $i$  runs over  $1, 2, \dots, n$  and  $\tau$  runs through all permutations of  $\{1, \dots, \hat{i}, \dots, n\}$ , the formula  $\sigma = \tau(1i)$  gives back exactly once each permutation  $\sigma$  of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . In this notation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & (x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n \mid \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i-1} (x_1 \mid \alpha_i) \sum_{\tau} (\operatorname{sgn} \tau) \\ & \quad \times (x_2 \mid \alpha_{\tau 1}) \cdots (x_i \mid \alpha_{\tau(i-1)}) (x_{i+1} \mid \alpha_{\tau(i+1)}) \cdots (x_n \mid \alpha_{\tau n}) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma} (x_1 \mid \alpha_{\sigma 1}) (-1)^i (\operatorname{sgn} \sigma) \\ & \quad \times (x_2 \mid \alpha_{\sigma i}) \cdots (x_i \mid \alpha_{\sigma(i-1)}) (x_{i+1} \mid \alpha_{\sigma(i+1)}) \cdots (x_n \mid \alpha_{\sigma n}). \end{aligned}$$

Now, let  $\mu = (i, i-1 \cdots 2)$ . We note that  $\operatorname{sgn} \mu = (-1)^i$ . The expression above becomes

$$\sum_{\sigma} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma\mu) (x_1 \mid \alpha_{\sigma\mu 1}) (x_2 \mid \alpha_{\sigma\mu 2}) \cdots (x_n \mid \alpha_{\sigma\mu n})$$

as desired.

**EXAMPLE 6.** We shall calculate  $(x^{(2)}y \mid \alpha^{(2)}\beta)$  where  $y$  and  $\beta$  are negative. Now,

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(\alpha^{(2)}\beta) &= \alpha^{(2)} \otimes \beta + \alpha\beta \otimes \alpha + \alpha^{(2)}\beta \otimes 1 + \alpha \otimes \alpha\beta \\ & \quad + 1 \otimes \alpha^{(2)}\beta + \beta \otimes \alpha^{(2)}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by Rule 6,

$$\begin{aligned} (x^{(2)}y \mid \alpha^{(2)}\beta) &= (x^{(2)} \mid \alpha^{(2)})(y \mid \beta) - (x^{(2)} \mid \alpha\beta)(y \mid \alpha) \\ &= (x \mid \alpha)^{(2)}(y \mid \beta) - (x \mid \alpha)(x \mid \beta)(y \mid \alpha). \end{aligned}$$

**4. The tableau of two words.** In this section, we shall continue to let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint proper signed sets. Let  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$  and  $u = \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n$  be words in  $\operatorname{Mon}(L)$  and  $\operatorname{Mon}(P)$ , respectively. Then  $\operatorname{stand}(w)$  and  $\operatorname{stand}(u)$  are words in  $\operatorname{Div}(L)$  and  $\operatorname{Div}(P)$ , respectively. We define the tableau of  $w$  and  $u$ , written  $\operatorname{tab}(w \mid u)$ , by

$$\operatorname{tab}(w \mid u) = (\operatorname{stand}(w) \mid \operatorname{stand}(u)),$$

where the right-hand side is the Laplace pairing  $\Omega$  from  $\operatorname{Super}[L] \times \operatorname{Super}[P]$  to  $\operatorname{Super}[L \mid P]$ .

*Note.* If each  $x_i \in L^+$  and each  $\alpha_j \in P^+$ , we define the *characteristic-free permanent* to be  $\operatorname{tab}(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n \mid \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n)$ . A calculation with such an expression was made in Example 2, above.

Now, for a moment, let  $A$  be any signed set. We may take a basis for  $\operatorname{Super}[A]$  over  $\mathbf{Z}$  as remarked at the end of §2. Chapter 1, namely, elements of the form

$$a_1^{(e_1)} \cdots a_r^{(e_r)} b_1 \cdots b_s c_1^{m_1} \cdots c_u^{m_u},$$

where the  $a$ 's (resp.  $c$ 's) are distinct elements in  $A^+$  (resp.  $A^0$ ) and the  $b$ 's are distinct elements in  $A^-$ . We then may extend this basis to a  $\mathbf{Z}$ -basis of  $\operatorname{Super}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \operatorname{Super}[A]$ . We shall call this basis the *natural basis* of  $\operatorname{Super}[A] \otimes \cdots \otimes \operatorname{Super}[A]$ .

The purpose of this section is to examine  $\Delta^{(m)} \operatorname{tab}(w \mid u)$  in anticipation of some of the arguments in Chapter 3. We begin by noting two properties of  $\Delta$ . (Their easy proofs are omitted.)

(1) If  $a \in A^-$  or  $A^0$ , then

$$\Delta^{(m)}(a) = a \otimes 1 \otimes \cdots \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes a \otimes 1 \otimes \cdots \otimes 1 + \cdots + 1 \otimes \cdots \otimes 1 \otimes a.$$

If  $a \in A^+$ , then

$$\Delta^{(m)}(a^{(e)}) = \sum a^{(i_1)} \otimes \cdots \otimes a^{(i_m)},$$

where the sum is over all  $m$ -tuples of nonnegative integers  $(i_1, \dots, i_m)$  such that  $i_1 + \cdots + i_m = e$ .

(2) Let  $w$  be a word in  $\operatorname{Div}(A)$  with

$$w = x_1^{(e_1)} \cdots x_r^{(e_r)} y_1 \cdots y_s$$

and where the  $x$ 's (resp.  $y$ 's) are distinct elements in  $A^+$  (resp.  $A^-$ ). Then

$$\Delta(w) = \Delta(x_1^{(e_1)}) \cdots \delta(y_s) = \sum \pm w_1 \otimes w_2,$$

where  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  range over all distinct words such that  $\operatorname{Cont}(w_1) + \operatorname{Cont}(w_2) = \operatorname{Cont}(w)$ .

**PROPOSITION 7.** Let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint proper signed sets. Let  $w \in \operatorname{Mon}(L)$ ,  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$ , where  $w$  has no repeated negative letter. Let  $u \in \operatorname{Mon}(P)$ ,  $u = \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n$ , where  $u$  has no repeated negative letter. Let  $m \geq n$  and let  $\Delta^{(m)}(\operatorname{stand}(w) \mid \operatorname{stand}(u))$  be written as a linear combination of basis elements in the natural basis for  $\operatorname{Super}[L \mid P] \otimes \cdots \otimes \operatorname{Super}[L \mid P]$ , say,

$$\Delta^{(m)}(\operatorname{stand}(w) \mid \operatorname{stand}(u)) = \sum c_v v, c_v \in \mathbf{Z}.$$

(a) If  $v = v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_m$  where  $\operatorname{Length}(v_i) \leq 1$  for each  $i = 1, \dots, m$  and if  $c_v \neq 0$ , then  $v$  has the following form.

(\*) Let  $\sigma$  be a permutation of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  and let  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n\}$  be a subset of  $\{1, 2, \dots, m\}$ . Let  $j \in \{1, 2, \dots, m\}$ . If  $j = i_k$ , put  $v_j = (x_k \mid \alpha_{\sigma k})$ ; otherwise, put  $v_j = 1$ . Let  $v = v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_m$ .

(b) Conversely, if  $v$  has the form (\*), then  $c_v = \pm 1$ .

PROOF. We proceed by induction on  $n$ , the cases  $(x | \alpha)$  and  $(x^{(n)} | \alpha^{(n)})$  following from property (1), above. Hence, we may assume, e.g., that  $\text{stand}(w) = w'w''$  where  $w', w''$  have no common letters and have Lengths smaller than  $\text{Length}(w)$ . Apply Rule 6, §1, to see that

$$\Delta^{(m)}(w'w'' | \text{stand}(u)) = \sum \pm \Delta^{(m)}(w' | u_{(1)}) \Delta^{(m)}(w'' | u_{(2)}).$$

The proof now follows by applying the induction hypothesis and property (2), above.

An immediate consequence of part (b) of the Theorem is that  $\text{tab}(w | u) \neq 0$  if neither  $w$  nor  $u$  has repeated negative letters.

### 3. The Standard Basis Theorem

**0. Introduction.** In this chapter we derive a generalization of the classical straightening algorithm whose idea goes back to Clebsch, Capelli, and Young. We consider double Young tableaux, namely, products

$$(w_1 | u_1)(w_2 | u_2) \cdots (w_n | u_n)$$

of biproducts of  $w_i$  in  $\text{Div}[L]$  and  $u_i$  in  $\text{Div}[P]$ , where  $L$  and  $P$  are proper alphabets. If  $\text{Length}(w_i) = \lambda_i$  and if  $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \cdots \geq \lambda_n$ , then such a product of biproducts can be viewed as an operation which assigns a member of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  to a pair of triangular arrays  $D$ - $E$  (or Young diagrams) of the same shape  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots)$ .

The rows of the diagrams  $D$  are the displays of the words  $w_1, \dots, w_n$ , lined up one beneath the other; in this way the columns of  $D$  are defined. The diagram  $E$  is similarly made up out of the words  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$ . The two diagrams  $D$  and  $E$  are of the same display shape  $\lambda$ , where  $\lambda_i$  is the number of entries of the  $i$ th row. The novelty of the present approach consists in dealing with Young diagrams which are filled with both positively and negatively signed letters. This leads to a definition of a standard Young diagram (sometimes also called a Young tableau) which differs from the ones previously used, and which, as will be proved below, is the only one compatible with entires of two different signatures. The definition of a standard Young diagram requires both alphabets  $L$  and  $P$  to be linearly ordered sets. A diagram  $D$  filled with letters from the alphabet  $L$ , say, is defined to be standard where:

(1) if two letters  $x, y$  are next to each other on the same row of the diagram, and  $y$  follows  $x$ , then we must have  $x \leq y$  unless both  $x$  and  $y$  are negatively signed, in which case we require  $x < y$ .

(2) if two letters  $x, y$  are next to each other on the same column, and if  $y$  is on a lower row than  $x$ , then we have  $x \leq y$  unless both  $x$  and  $y$  are positively signed, in which case we require that  $x < y$ .

Our main result (the general Standard Basis Theorem) states that double standard diagrams (standard in both letters and places) are an integral basis for the underlying module of the superalgebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . The elements of a

standard basis thus depend upon the linear orders assigned to  $L$  and  $P$ . Such orderings of both  $L$  and  $P$  can be chosen arbitrarily independently of the position of positively and negatively signed elements; thus, depending on this choice, the set of standard Young diagrams can strikingly differ. For example all positively signed letters may be placed before all negatively signed letters in the linear order, or the linear order may be so chosen that every letter is immediately followed by a letter of the opposite parity. By the invariance of a dimension of a free module, it follows from our Standard Basis Theorem that the number of standard Young diagrams is the same irrespective of the linear ordering chosen, a fact that is far from obvious combinatorially. Among several special cases of the Standard Basis Theorem, at least two are worthy of mention and lead to new results in the invariant theory of tensors. When all letters are positive and all places negative, we obtain a generalization of the determinant that will be useful to derive the invariant theory of skew-symmetric tensors in arbitrary characteristics in much the same way as the classical case ( $L = L^-$  and  $P = P^-$ , as in Doubilet-Rota-Stein) relates to the invariant theory of symmetric tensors (but in this latter case only in characteristic zero).

Secondly, when all letters and places are positive, we obtain a straightening algorithm for permanents, applicable in arbitrary characteristic, a result which a priori may seem unexpected.

**1. Definitions, statement of theorem.** In this chapter, we shall develop the main combinatoric tools to be applied to invariant theory. We begin with some important terminology.

Let  $A$  (for a moment) be any set. A *Young diagram* on  $A$ ,  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  is a sequence of words  $w_i \in \text{Mon}(A)$  such that  $\text{length}(w_1) \geq \text{length}(w_2) \geq \dots \geq \text{length}(w_n)$ . The integer  $n$  is called the *number of rows* of the Young diagram  $D$  and the vector  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n)$  is called the *shape* of  $D$ ; here  $\lambda_i = \text{length}(w_i)$ . We define "content" in this setting by  $\text{cont}(D) = \text{cont}(w_1) + \text{cont}(w_2) + \dots + \text{cont}(w_n)$ .

If  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  where  $w_1 = x_1 x_2 \dots x_{\lambda_1}$ ,  $w_2 = y_1 y_2 \dots y_{\lambda_2}$ , then we envision  $D$  as follows

$$D: \begin{array}{cccc} x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_{\lambda_1} \\ y_1 & y_2 & \cdots & y_{\lambda_2} \\ & & \vdots & \end{array}$$

The shapes of Young diagrams may be partially ordered. Indeed, if  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n)$  and  $\lambda' = (\lambda'_1, \lambda'_2, \dots, \lambda'_m)$ , then we write  $\lambda \leq \lambda'$  when  $\sum_i \lambda_i = \sum_i \lambda'_i$  and  $\lambda_1 \leq \lambda'_1$ ,  $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 \leq \lambda'_1 + \lambda'_2$ , and so on.

Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  be a Young diagram with  $w_1 = x_{11} x_{12} \dots x_{1\lambda_1}$ ,  $w_2 = x_{21} x_{22} \dots x_{2\lambda_2}, \dots$ . We define a Young diagram  $\tilde{D} = (\tilde{w}_1, \tilde{w}_2, \dots, \tilde{w}_k)$ , called the *dual* of  $D$ , by

$$\tilde{w}_1 = x_{11} x_{21} \dots x_{n1}, \quad \tilde{w}_2 = x_{12} x_{22} \dots$$

and so on. The shape of  $\tilde{D}$  is  $(\tilde{\lambda}_1, \tilde{\lambda}_2, \dots, \tilde{\lambda}_k)$  where  $\tilde{\lambda}_i$  is the number of  $\lambda_j$  which are  $\geq i$ . We note here that  $\tilde{\tilde{D}} = D$  and  $\text{cont}(\tilde{D}) = \text{cont}(D)$ . We call  $k = \lambda_1$  the *number of columns* of  $D$ . Furthermore, we say that two entries of  $D$  are in the same row (resp. column) if they are in the same  $w_i$  (resp.  $\tilde{w}_i$ ). Also, in an obvious way, we may speak of "adjacent entries" in  $D$ .

A linearly ordered proper signed set  $A$  is called an *alphabet*.

Let  $A$  be an alphabet. Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  be a Young diagram on  $A$  and let  $\tilde{D} = (\tilde{w}_1, \tilde{w}_2, \dots, \tilde{w}_k)$  be its dual. The Young Diagram  $D$  is said to be *standard* when, for each of the words

$$\begin{array}{ll} w_i = x_1 x_2 \dots x_r, & x_j \in A, \\ \tilde{w}_i = y_1 y_2 \dots y_s, & y_j \in A, \end{array}$$

the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1) if  $x_j \in A^+$ , then  $x_j \leq x_{j+1}$ ,
- (2) if  $x_j \in A^-$ , then  $x_j < x_{j+1}$ ,
- (3) if  $y_j \in A^+$ , then  $y_j < y_{j+1}$ ,
- (4) if  $y_j \in A^-$ , then  $y_j \leq y_{j+1}$ .

Now, let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint alphabets. In Chapter 2, we defined the signed set  $[L | P]$  and constructed the Laplace pairing

$$\Omega: \text{Super}[L] \times \text{Super}[P] \rightarrow \text{Super}[L | P].$$

Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  and  $E = (w'_1, w'_2, \dots, w'_n)$  be Young diagrams, of the same shape, on  $L$  and  $P$ , respectively. The *Young tableau* of the diagram pair  $D-E$  is defined by  $\text{Tab}(D | E) = (\text{stand}(w_1) | \text{stand}(w'_1)) \cdots (\text{stand}(w_n) | \text{stand}(w'_n))$ . With all this terminology in place, we may now state the main theorem in this chapter.

**THEOREM 8.** *Let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint alphabets. The  $\text{Tab}(D_i | E_i)$ , where  $D_i$  and  $E_i$  are standard and have the same shape, form a basis of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  over  $\mathbf{Z}$ . In particular, let  $D$  and  $E$  be Young diagrams, having the same shape, on  $L$  and  $P$ , respectively. Then*

$$\text{Tab}(D | E) = \sum_i c_i \text{Tab}(D_i | E_i)$$

in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  where

- (i)  $D_i$  and  $E_i$  are standard on  $L$  and  $P$ , respectively;
- (ii)  $\text{cont}(D_i) = \text{cont}(D)$  and  $\text{cont}(E_i) = \text{cont}(E)$ ;
- (iii)  $\text{shape}(D) \leq \text{shape}(D_i)$ ;
- (iv) the integer coefficients  $c_i$  are unique.

The existence of such a representation will be proved in §2. The uniqueness of the coefficients  $c_i$  will be proved in §§3, 4, and 5.

**NOTES.** (1) If  $L = L^-$  and  $P = P^-$ , we get the classical straightening formula proved by Doubilet, Rota, and Stein in 1974.

(2) The case where  $L = L^+$  and  $P = P^-$  was proved in characteristic zero only by Doubilet and Rota in 1976. The characteristic-free result given above is new.

(3) Permanents may be straightened by applying the theorem when  $L = L^+$  and  $P = P^+$ . Our result is however more general, since it applies to characteristic-free permanents as well.

(4) The dimension of the space spanned by  $\text{Tab}(D_i | E_i)$ , where  $D_i$  and  $E_i$  are standard of some given shape, is independent of the orderings on  $L$  and  $P$ . (It does depend, of course, on the choice of subsets  $L^+$ ,  $L^-$ ,  $P^+$ , and  $P^-$ .) One interesting order is when  $L^+ < L^-$ .

We conclude this section with some technical comments on a content function for  $L \cup P$ . These will be useful to us in the proofs to follow.

Let  $w \in \text{Div}([L | P])$ . For  $x \in L$ , we define

$$\text{Cont}(w)(x) = \sum_{\alpha \in P} \text{Cont}(w)(x | \alpha).$$

Similarly, for  $\alpha \in P$  we may define  $\text{Cont}(w)(\alpha)$ . In this way, we obtain a multiset,  $\text{Cont}(w)$ , on  $L \cup P$ . The following properties of this multiset will be useful to us. (Their elementary proofs are omitted.)

(1) If  $z \in L \cup P$ , then  $\text{Cont}(ww')(z) = \text{Cont}(w)(z) + \text{Cont}(w')(z)$ .

(2) Let  $m$  be a given multiset on  $L \cup P$ . We consider all words  $w \in \text{Div}([L | P])$  such that  $\text{Cont}(w) = m$ . These words, together with 0, span a submodule of  $\text{Tens}[L | P]$  which we shall denote by  $\text{Tens}_m[L | P]$ . Furthermore,  $\text{Tens}[L | P]$  is the direct sum of all these submodules.

Let  $I$  be the ideal in  $\text{Tens}[L | P]$  defining  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . If  $i \in I$  and  $i = \sum i_m$ , where  $i_m \in \text{Tens}_m[L | P]$ , then each  $i_m$  is in  $I$  since this is true for the generators of  $I$ . It follows that if  $w, w' \in \text{Div}([L | P])$  and  $w \equiv w' \pmod{I}$  but  $w \notin I$ , then  $\text{Cont}(w)(z) = \text{Cont}(w')(z)$  for all  $z \in L \cup P$ .

(3) Let  $w, u$  be words of the same Length in  $\text{Super}[L]$  and  $\text{Super}[P]$ , respectively. Applying induction on Length  $w$  and Rules 4, 5, and 6 in Chapter 2, §1, we may show that for each term  $W$  in the expansion of  $(w | u)$ ,  $\text{Cont}(W)(x) = \text{Cont}(w)(x)$  for all  $x \in L$  and  $\text{Cont}(W)(\alpha) = \text{Cont}(u)(\alpha)$  for all  $\alpha \in P$ . Sometimes, we denote this by  $\text{Cont}(w | u)(x) = \text{Cont}(w)(x)$  and  $\text{Cont}(w | u)(\alpha) = \text{Cont}(u)(\alpha)$ .

(4) Let  $w \in \text{Super}[L | P]$  and let

$$\Delta^{(m)}(w) = \sum w_{(1)} \otimes \cdots \otimes w_{(m)}.$$

In Chapter 1, we saw that (we may assume that)

$$\sum_i \text{Cont } w_{(i)}(x | \alpha) = \text{Cont}(w)(x | \alpha).$$

From this it follows that we may assume that

$$\sum \text{Cont}(w_{(i)})(z) = \text{Cont}(w)(z)$$

for all  $z \in L \cup P$ .

Let  $D$  and  $E$  be Young diagrams, having the same shape, on  $L$  and  $P$ , respectively. Let  $x \in L$ . It follows from the preceding properties that

$$\text{Cont}(\text{Tab}(D | E))(x) = \text{cont}(D)(x).$$

Similarly, if  $\alpha \in P$ , then

$$\text{Cont}(\text{Tab}(D | E))(\alpha) = \text{cont}(E)(\alpha).$$

This has the following important consequence. The proof of Theorem 8 will be carried out in some fixed submodule of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  of given Content on  $L \cup P$ .

**2. Spanning.** In this section, we shall show that  $\text{Tab}(D | E)$  can be written as a linear combination of the  $\text{Tab}(D_i | E_i)$ , where  $D_i$  and  $E_i$  are standard Young diagrams. For a moment, let  $A$  be any signed set. We recall that in Chapter 1, we defined a mapping  $S: \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A]$  by  $S(w) = \text{sign}(\text{Length}(w))w$ . In this section, we shall denote  $S(w)$  by  $\langle w \rangle$ . We also defined  $\varepsilon(w) = 1$  if  $\text{Length}(w) = 0$  and  $\varepsilon(w) = 0$ , otherwise.

In Chapter 2, we defined the tableau

$$\left( \begin{array}{c|c} w_1 & u_1 \\ w_2 & u_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ w_n & u_n \end{array} \right)$$

to be  $\text{sign}(\sum_{i>j} |w_i| |u_j|)(w_1 | u_1) \cdots (w_n | u_n)$ . We shall be working with such expressions throughout this section.

Again, let  $A$  be any signed set. If  $z \in \text{Super}[A]$ , then we have written  $\Delta z = \sum_z z_{(1)} \otimes z_{(2)}$ . In this section only, we change this notation and write

$$\Delta z = \sum_z z_1 \otimes z_2.$$

Similarly, since  $\Delta^{(3)}(z) = (1 \otimes \Delta)\Delta(z)$ , we shall write

$$\Delta^{(3)}(z) = \sum_{z, z_2} z_1 \otimes z_{21} \otimes z_{22}$$

and so on. (We shall use repeatedly fact (1) following Rule 6 in Chapter 2.)

REMARK. An induction argument on Length  $z$  shows that

$$\Delta z = \sum_z z_1 \otimes z_2 = \sum \text{sign}(|z_1| |z_2|) z_2 \otimes z_1.$$

PROPOSITION 9. Let  $d, c$  be words in  $\text{Super}[L]$  with  $\Delta^{(3)}(d) = \sum_d d_1 \otimes d_2 \otimes d_3$ . Let  $y, z$  be words in  $\text{Super}[P]$  with  $\Delta^{(3)}(z) = \sum z_1 \otimes z_2 \otimes z_3$ . Then

$$\sum_{d, z} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} d_1 & y \\ d_2 & z_1 \\ \langle d_3 \rangle & z_2 \\ c & z_3 \end{array} \right) = \left( \begin{array}{c|c} d & y \\ c & z \end{array} \right).$$

PROOF. The left-hand side of this equation may be rewritten as

$$\sum_{d,z} \sum_{z_1} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} d_1 & y \\ d_2 & z_{11} \\ \langle d_3 \rangle & z_{12} \\ c & z_2 \end{array} \right).$$

Applying Rule 6 in Chapter 2, we see this is equal to

$$\sum_{d,z} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} d_1 & y \\ d_2 \langle d_3 \rangle & z_1 \\ c & z_2 \end{array} \right).$$

Relabeling the  $d$ -variables, the expression above is

$$\sum_{d,z} \sum_{d_2} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} d_1 & y \\ d_{21} \langle d_{22} \rangle & z_1 \\ c & z_2 \end{array} \right).$$

According to Proposition 6, we have  $\sum_{d_2} d_{21} \langle d_{22} \rangle = \varepsilon(d_2)$ . So, the expression above becomes

$$\sum_{d,z} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} d_1 & y \\ \varepsilon(d_2) & z_1 \\ c & z_2 \end{array} \right).$$

The only nonzero term of this sum occurs when  $d_1 = d$ ,  $d_2 = 1$ ,  $z_1 = 1$ , and  $z_2 = z$ . This proves the Proposition.

PROPOSITION 10. Let  $a, b, c$  be words in  $\text{Super}[L]$  with  $\Delta a = \sum_a a_1 \otimes a_2$  and  $\Delta b = \sum_b b_1 \otimes b_2$ . Let  $x$  and  $y$  be words in  $\text{Super}[P]$  with  $\Delta y = \sum_y y_1 \otimes y_2$ . Then

$$\sum_b \left( \begin{array}{c|c} ab_1 & x \\ b_2 c & y \end{array} \right) = \text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} ba_1 & xy_1 \\ \langle a_2 \rangle c & y_2 \end{array} \right).$$

PROOF. We begin by applying Rule 6, Chapter 2, §2, to the terms  $(ab_1 | x)$  and  $(b_2 c | y)$ . The left-hand side of the equation stated in the theorem then becomes

$$\sum_{b,x,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} a & x_1 \\ b_1 & x_2 \\ b_2 & y_1 \\ c & y_2 \end{array} \right).$$

Permuting the first row with the second and third rows (via condition (ii) in §2 of Chapter 2), this becomes

$$\sum_{b,x,y} \text{sign}(|a||b|) \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b_1 & x_2 \\ b_2 & y_1 \\ a & x_1 \\ c & y_2 \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_1||x_2| + |x_1||y_1|).$$

Next, we apply Proposition 9 to the last two rows with  $d = a$ ,  $y = x_1$ ,  $c = c$ , and  $z = y_2$ ; we obtain

$$\sum_{b,x,y} \sum_{y_2,a} \text{sign}(|a||b|) \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b_1 & x_2 \\ b_2 & y_1 \\ a_1 & x_1 \\ a_2 & y_{21} \\ \langle a_3 \rangle & y_{22} \\ c & y_{23} \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_1||x_2| + |x_1||y_1|).$$

But,

$$\sum_{y,y_2} y_1 \otimes y_{21} \otimes y_{22} \otimes y_{23} = \sum_{y,y_3} y_1 \otimes y_2 \otimes y_{31} \otimes y_{32}.$$

We apply Rule 6 to the last two rows of the expression above and relabel the  $y$ -variables (as allowed by fact (1) following Rule 6 in Chapter 2) to obtain

$$\text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,b,x,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b_1 & x_2 \\ b_2 & y_1 \\ a_1 & x_1 \\ a_2 & y_2 \\ \langle a_3 \rangle c & y_3 \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_1||x_2| + |x_1||y_1|).$$

We relabel the  $a$ -variables to see this equals

$$\text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,b,x,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b_1 & x_2 \\ b_2 & y_1 \\ a_{11} & x_1 \\ a_{12} & y_2 \\ \langle a_2 \rangle c & y_3 \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_1||x_2| + |x_1||y_1|).$$

Two further applications of Rule 5 simplify this to

$$\text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,x,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b & x_2 y_1 \\ a_1 & x_1 y_2 \\ \langle a_2 \rangle c & y_3 \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_1||x_2| + |x_1||y_1|).$$

Relabeling the  $y$ -variables, we see that this equals

$$\text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,x,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b & x_2 y_{11} \\ a_1 & x_1 y_{12} \\ \langle a_2 \rangle c & y_2 \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_1||x_2| + |x_1||y_{11}|).$$

Now,

$$\Delta(xy_1) = \left( \sum_x x_1 \otimes x_2 \right) \left( \sum_{y_1} y_{11} \otimes y_{12} \right) = \sum_{x,y_1} \text{sign}(|x_2||y_{11}|) x_1 y_{11} \otimes x_2 y_{12}.$$

We apply the remark made just before Proposition 9 to see that  $\Delta(xy_1)$  is also

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \sum_x \text{sign}(|x_2||x_1|) x_2 \otimes x_1 \right) \left( \sum_{y_1} y_{11} \otimes y_{12} \right) \\ & = \sum_{x,y_1} \text{sign}(|x_2||x_1| + |x_1||y_{11}|) x_2 y_{11} \otimes x_1 y_{12}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the expression above is

$$\text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,x,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} b & x_1 y_{11} \\ a_1 & x_2 y_{12} \\ \langle a_2 \rangle c & y_2 \end{array} \right) \text{sign}(|x_2| |y_{11}|).$$

One final application of Rule 6 shows that this equals

$$\text{sign}(|a||b|) \sum_{a,y} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} ba_1 & xy_1 \\ \langle a_2 \rangle c & y_2 \end{array} \right)$$

as desired.

NOTE. Applying the same reasoning with the roles of the left and right tableaux interchanged, we see that

$$\sum_y \left( \begin{array}{c|c} a & xy_1 \\ b & y_2 z \end{array} \right) = \text{sign}(|x||y|) \sum_{x,b} \left( \begin{array}{c|c} ab_1 & yx_1 \\ b_2 & \langle x_2 \rangle z \end{array} \right).$$

PROOF OF THEOREM 8, (i), (ii), AND (iii). Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  and  $E = (w'_1, w'_2, \dots, w'_n)$  be Young diagrams, having the same shape, on the alphabets  $L$  and  $P$ , respectively. Suppose that the shape of  $D = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n)$ .

If  $n = 1$ , then we are finished since in the expression  $(\text{stand}(w_1) | \text{stand}(w'_1))$  terms can be rearranged in  $\text{Super}[L]$  or  $\text{Super}[P]$  and  $a^{(i)}a^{(j)}$  can be replaced by  $\binom{i+j}{i} a^{(i+j)}$ .

Next, suppose  $n > 1$ . As noted at the end of §1, we shall carry out this proof in a submodule of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  of given Content on  $L \cup P$ . We may assume the theorem holds for all such Young diagrams of shape bigger than  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n)$ .

We now suppose that the theorem is false for some diagram pairs of shape  $\lambda$ . We order such diagram pairs via the lexicographic ordering obtained by lining up the words. That is, suppose that  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  and  $E = (w'_1, w'_2, \dots, w'_n)$  where  $w_i = x_{i1}x_{i2} \cdots x_{i\lambda_i}$  and  $w'_i = x'_{i1}x'_{i2} \cdots x'_{i\lambda_i}$ . Then, we apply the lexicographic order to the sequence

$$x_{11}, x_{12}, \dots, x_{1\lambda_1}, x_{21}, \dots, x'_{n\lambda_n}.$$

Among the diagram pairs  $D-E$  of shape  $\lambda$  for which the theorem is false, we choose the smallest pair  $D-E$  in this lexicographic order. It follows that the rows of  $D$  and  $E$  are nondecreasing, i.e.,

$$x_{i1} \leq x_{i2} \leq \cdots \quad \text{and} \quad x'_{i1} \leq x'_{i2} \leq \cdots.$$

If either  $D$  or  $E$  has a row with a repeated negative letter, then  $\text{Tab}(D | E) = 0$  and the theorem holds. Otherwise, since either  $D$  or  $E$  is not standard, conditions (3) or (4) of the definition in §1 must be violated. We shall assume that the first such violation occurs in  $D$ . Changing notation, let us assume this first violation occurs in rows

$$x_1 x_2 \cdots x_m x_{m+1} x_{m+2} \cdots x_n$$

$$y_1 y_2 \cdots y_m y_{m+1} y_{m+2} \cdots y_r$$

when comparing  $x_{m+1}$  to  $y_{m+1}$ .

Case 1.  $x_{m+1} > y_{m+1}$ . We begin by noting that

$$x_1 \leq \cdots \leq x_m < x_{m+1} \leq \cdots \leq x_n,$$

$$y_1 \leq \cdots \leq y_m \leq y_{m+1} = \cdots = y_{m+k} < y_{m+k+1} \leq \cdots \leq y_r$$

(where  $k \geq 1$ ) and

$$y_1 \leq \cdots \leq y_m \leq y_{m+1} < x_{m+1} \leq \cdots \leq x_n.$$

In the statement of Proposition 10, we take

$$a = \text{stand}(x_1 \cdots x_m), \quad c = \text{stand}(y_{m+k+1} \cdots y_r),$$

and  $b = de$ , where

$$d = \text{stand}(x_{m+1} \cdots x_n), \quad e = \text{stand}(y_1 \cdots y_{m+k}).$$

Let  $\Delta(de) = \sum b_1 \otimes b_2$ . Then (we may assume that) there is one and only one term with  $b_1 = d$  and  $b_2 = e$ .

We now examine both sides of the equation in Proposition 10. On the left-hand side, the term with  $b_1 = d$ ,  $b_2 = e$  appears once. In all the other terms on the left-hand side,  $b_1$  must contain letters from  $e$ ; the corresponding Young diagram is smaller than  $D$  in the lexicographic order. On the right-hand side, the length of the first row is

$$\text{Length}(de) + \text{Length}(a_1) \geq \text{Length}(d) + \text{Length}(e) > \text{Length}(ad).$$

All the corresponding Young diagrams have longer shapes than that of  $D$ . Combining these two statements, we see that the theorem holds for  $D-E$  (which is a contradiction).

Case 2.  $x_{m+1} = y_{m+1} = z =$  a positive element in  $L$ . Let us suppose that the rows in question are

$$x_1 \cdots x_m \overbrace{z \cdots z}^i x_{m+i+1} \cdots x_n$$

and

$$y_1 \cdots y_k \underbrace{z \cdots z}_j y_{k+j+1} \cdots y_r,$$

where

$$x_1 \leq \cdots \leq x_m < z < x_{m+i+1} \leq \cdots \leq x_n$$

and

$$y_1 \leq \cdots \leq y_k < z < y_{k+j+1} \leq \cdots \leq y_r.$$

Again, we use Proposition 10, but now with

$$a = \text{stand}(x_1 \cdots x_m),$$

$$b = z^{(i+j)} \text{stand}(x_{m+i+1} \cdots x_n) \text{stand}(y_1 \cdots y_k),$$

and

$$c = \text{stand}(y_{k+j+1} \cdots y_r).$$

On the left-hand side, the term

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} az^{(i)} \text{ stand}(x_{m+i+1} \cdots x_n) \\ \text{stand}(y_1 \cdots y_k) z^{(j)c} \end{array} \middle| \cdots \right)$$

appears once; if there are any other terms on the left-hand side, they correspond to Young diagrams shorter than  $D$  in the Lexicographic order. All the terms on the right-hand side correspond to Young diagrams having shape larger than that of  $D$ . This completes the proof of (i), (ii), and (iii).

**3. A bilinear  $\mathbf{Z}$ -valued form.** Let  $A$  be any proper signed set. We define the *adjoint* of  $A$  in the following way. Let  $A^*$  be a set which is isomorphic to  $A$  via a mapping  $\phi: A \rightarrow A^*$ . We make  $A^*$  into a signed set by defining  $(A^*)^-$  to be  $\phi(A^+)$  and  $(A^*)^+$  to be  $\phi(A^-)$ . The mapping  $\phi$  induces a map (also denoted by  $\phi$ ) from  $\text{Mon}(A)$  to  $\text{Mon}(A^*)$  by

$$\phi(x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n) = \phi(x_1) \phi(x_2) \cdots \phi(x_n) = x_1^* x_2^* \cdots x_n^*.$$

If  $w \in \text{Mon}(A)$ , we shall denote  $\phi(w)$  by  $w^*$ . For a Young diagram  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  on  $A$ , we set  $D^* = \phi(D) = (w_1^*, w_2^*, \dots, w_n^*)$ . If  $D$  and  $E$  are Young diagrams, of the same shape, on disjoint alphabets  $L$  and  $P$ , then we define

$$\text{Tab}^+(D | E) = \text{Tab}(\tilde{D}^* | \tilde{E}^*).$$

As usual, let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint alphabets. If  $w \in \text{Div}(L)$  and  $w' \in \text{Div}(P)$  with  $\text{Length}(w) = \text{Length}(w')$ , then we define  $\text{Length}(w | w') = \text{Length}(w) = \text{Length}(w')$ . Indeed, according to (3), §1, we may assume that each nonzero term in the expansion of  $(w | w')$  has Length equal to  $\text{Length}(w)$ .

**PROPOSITION 11.** For  $p \in \text{Super}[L^* | P^*]$  and  $q \in \text{Super}[L | P]$ , a bilinear  $\mathbf{Z}$ -valued form is consistently defined by the following algorithm:

- (1)  $\langle p, q \rangle = 0$  if  $\text{Length}(p) \neq \text{Length}(q)$ ;
- (2)  $\langle 1, 1 \rangle = 1$ ;
- (3)  $\langle (x^* | \alpha^*), (x | \alpha) \rangle = \text{sign}(|x | \alpha^*|)$ ,  
 $\langle (x^* | \alpha^*), (y | \beta) \rangle = 0$  if  $y \neq x$  or  $\beta \neq \alpha$ ;
- (4)  $\langle (x^* | \alpha^*)^{(n)}, (y | \beta)^{(n)} \rangle = 0$  if  $n \geq 2$ ;
- (5)  $\langle w, u', u'' \rangle = \sum_w \text{sign}(|w_{(2)} | |u'|) \langle w_{(1)}, u' \rangle \langle w_{(2)}, u'' \rangle$

where  $\Delta w = \sum_w w_{(1)} \otimes w_{(2)}$ ;

$$(6) \quad \langle w' w'', u \rangle = \sum_u \text{sign}(|w'' | |u_{(1)}|) \langle w', u_{(1)} \rangle \langle w'', u_{(2)} \rangle$$

where  $\Delta u = \sum_u u_{(1)} \otimes u_{(2)}$ .

The proof of Proposition 11 is just like that given for the mapping  $\Omega$  in Chapter 2, §2, and we shall omit it except for four comments. First, both conditions (i) and (ii) must be checked at each step  $n$ . (Since  $\mathbf{Z}$  is commutative,  $\varepsilon$  can be  $-1$  in condition (ii) only when both sides of the equation are 0.) Second, the analogues of Formulas (a) and (b) hold and will be important to us later. Third, if  $(x^* | \alpha^*)$  is positive, then  $(x | \alpha)$  is neutral. Fourth,  $|(x | \alpha)| = |x| + |\alpha|$ .

**PROPOSITION 12.** Let  $w, w' \in \text{Div}(L)$ , let  $u, u' \in \text{Div}(P)$ , and let the Lengths of all four words be at least 2. Then  $\langle (w^* | u^*), (w' | u') \rangle = 0$ .

**PROOF.** Suppose for a moment that we have proved the theorem when all the words have Length = 2. Then, applying (4), (5), and (6) in Proposition 11, we obtain the proof for any Length  $\geq 3$ . So, we shall assume that all the words have Length = 2. The argument in this case is a long computation whose main points we shall indicate here.

(I) Let  $A$  be any signed set and let  $x, y \in A$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(xy) &= (x \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes x)(y \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes y) \\ &= xy \otimes 1 + \text{sign}(|x | |y|) y \otimes x \\ &\quad + x \otimes y + 1 \otimes xy. \end{aligned}$$

(II) To prove the theorem, it is enough to show that

$$\langle (x'y' | \alpha'\beta'), (xy | \alpha\beta) \rangle = 0,$$

where the letters and places above are not necessarily distinct. Now, applying Rule 5, Chapter 2, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} (xy | \alpha\beta) &= \text{sign}(|x | |y| + |x | |\alpha|)(y | \alpha)(x | \beta) \\ &\quad + \text{sign}(|y | |\alpha|)(x | \alpha)(y | \beta), \end{aligned}$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} \langle (x'y' | \alpha'\beta'), (xy | \alpha\beta) \rangle &= \langle (x'y' | \alpha'\beta'), \text{sign}(|x | |y| + |x | |\alpha|)(y | \alpha)(x | \beta) \\ &\quad + \text{sign}(|y | |\alpha|)(x | \alpha)(y | \beta) \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

(III) We now apply (5), Proposition 11, calculating  $\Delta((x'y' | \alpha'\beta'))$  to be

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{sign}(|x' | |y'| + |x' | |\alpha'|) [\text{sign}(|y' | |\alpha'|) |(x' | \beta')|] \\ &\quad \times (x' | \beta') \otimes (y' | \alpha') + (y' | \alpha') \otimes (x' | \beta') \\ &+ \text{sign}(|y' | |\alpha'|) [\text{sign}(|x' | |\alpha'|) |(y' | \beta')|] \\ &\quad \times (y' | \beta') \otimes (x' | \alpha') + (x' | \alpha') \otimes (y' | \beta') \\ &+ (\text{terms of wrong shape}). \end{aligned}$$

When (5) is applied, we obtain eight terms.

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{sign}(|x | |y| + |x | |\alpha| + |x' | |y'| + |x' | |\alpha'|) \\ (1) \quad &+ |(y' | \alpha')| |(x' | \beta')| + |(y | \alpha)| |(y' | \alpha')| \\ &\times \langle (x' | \beta'), (y | \alpha) \rangle \langle (y' | \alpha'), (x | \beta) \rangle; \end{aligned}$$

$$(2) \quad \text{sign}(|x||y| + |x||\alpha| + |x'||y'| + |x'||\alpha'| + |(y|\alpha)| |(x'|\beta')|) \\ \times \langle (y'|\alpha'), (y|\alpha) \rangle \langle (x'|\beta'), (x|\beta) \rangle;$$

$$(3) \quad \text{sign}(|x||y| + |x||\alpha| + |y'||\alpha'| + |(x'|\alpha')| |(y'|\beta')| + |(y|\alpha)| |(x'|\alpha')|) \\ \times \langle (y'|\beta'), (y|\alpha) \rangle \langle (x'|\alpha'), (x|\beta) \rangle;$$

$$(4) \quad \text{sign}(|x||y| + |x||\alpha| + |y'||\alpha'| + |(y|\alpha)| |(y'|\beta')|) \\ \times \langle (x'|\alpha'), (y|\alpha) \rangle \langle (y'|\beta'), (x|\beta) \rangle;$$

$$(5) \quad \text{sign}(|y|\alpha| + |x'||y'| + |x'||\alpha'| + |(y'|\alpha')| |(x'|\beta')| + |(x|\alpha)| |(y'|\alpha')|) \\ \times \langle (x'|\beta'), (x|\alpha) \rangle \langle (y'|\alpha'), (y|\beta) \rangle;$$

$$(6) \quad \text{sign}(|y|\alpha| + |x'||y'| + |x'||\alpha'| + |(x|\alpha)| |(x'|\beta')|) \\ \times \langle (y'|\alpha'), (x|\alpha) \rangle \langle (x'|\beta'), (y|\beta) \rangle;$$

$$(7) \quad \text{sign}(|y|\alpha| + |y'||\alpha'| + |(x'|\alpha')| |(y'|\beta')| + |(x|\alpha)| |(x'|\alpha')|) \\ \times \langle (y'|\beta'), (x|\alpha) \rangle \langle (x'|\alpha'), (y|\beta) \rangle;$$

$$(8) \quad \text{sign}(|y|\alpha| + |y'||\alpha'| + |(x|\alpha)| |(y'|\beta')|) \\ \times \langle (x'|\alpha'), (x|\alpha) \rangle \langle (y'|\beta'), (y|\beta) \rangle.$$

(IV) Next, we pair off the eight terms above as follows: (1) and (7), (2) and (8), (3) and (5), (4) and (6). To see how the proof is concluded, let us focus in on terms (1) and (7). The inner products in question give 0 unless  $x' = y^*$ ,  $y' = x^*$ ,  $\beta' = \alpha^*$ , and  $\alpha' = \beta^*$ . This is true for both terms (1) and (7). If the terms are not zero, we calculate each one using (3), Proposition 11, and the equalities

$$|x^*| = |x| + 1, \quad |(x|\alpha)| = |x| = |\alpha|.$$

The net result is that these two terms always cancel each other. This completes the proof.

**4. Gale-Ryser interpolating matrices.** For a moment, let  $A$  be any signed set. A matrix  $w = \{w_{ij} : i, j = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  is said to be a *Gale-Ryser matrix* when

(1)  $w_{ij} \in \text{Mon}(A)$  and  $\text{length}(w_{ij}) \leq 1$ ;

(2) for fixed  $i$ , almost all  $w_{ij}$  equal 1 and for fixed  $j$ , almost all  $w_{ij}$  equal 1.

Under these conditions, the row products

$$r_i = w_{i1}w_{i2}\cdots, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots$$

and the column products

$$c_j = w_{1j}w_{2j}\cdots, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots$$

are well defined. We display this as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \\ r_3 & w_{31} & w_{32} & w_{33} & \cdots & & \\ r_2 & w_{21} & w_{22} & w_{23} & \cdots & & \\ r_1 & w_{11} & w_{12} & w_{13} & \cdots & & \\ & c_1 & c_2 & c_3 & \cdots & & \end{array}$$

A Gale-Ryser matrix  $W$  interpolates the pair of Young diagrams  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots)$  and  $D' = (u_1, u_2, \dots)$  on  $A$  when  $\text{cont}(w_j) = \text{cont}(c_j)$  and  $\text{cont}(u_i) = \text{cont}(r_i)$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ . The pair  $(D, D')$  is a *Gale-Ryser pair* when there exists a Gale-Ryser matrix which interpolates  $(D, D')$ .

**PROPOSITION 13.** Let  $D$  and  $D'$  be Young diagrams over  $A$  having shapes  $\lambda$  and  $\lambda'$ , respectively. The pair  $(D, \tilde{D}')$  is a Gale-Ryser pair only if  $\lambda \leq \lambda'$ .

**PROOF.** Let  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots)$  and  $\lambda' = (\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots)$ . Let  $W = (w_{ij})$  be the Gale-Ryser matrix which interpolates the pair  $(D, \tilde{D}')$ . The number of rows in  $\tilde{D}'$  is  $\mu_1$ ; therefore in the display of  $W$ ,  $\mu_1$  is the smallest integer  $n$  so that each row above  $r_n$  consists only of 1's. On the other hand,  $\lambda_1$  is the number of entries, different from 1, in column 1. From this, we see that  $\lambda_1 \leq \mu_1$ .

Next, suppose that  $\lambda_1 \leq \mu_1, \dots, \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \dots + \lambda_{j-1} \leq \mu_1 + \mu_2 + \dots + \mu_{j-1}$ . We shall prove

$$(*) \quad \lambda_j \leq \mu_j + (\mu_1 + \dots + \mu_{j-1}) - (\lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_{j-1}).$$

To do this, we need to describe  $\mu_j$  and  $\lambda_j$  as the cardinalities of certain sets of row indices. First,

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_j &= \text{number of words in } \tilde{D}' \text{ of length } \geq j \\ &= \text{Card}\{i : \text{number of entries } \neq 1 \text{ in row } i \text{ is } \geq j\}. \end{aligned}$$

Second,

$$\lambda_j = \text{Card}\{i : w_{ij} \neq 1\}.$$

Now, let  $i$  be a row index appearing for  $\lambda_j$  (so that  $w_{ij} \neq 1$ ). We distinguish two cases.

*Case 1.*  $\text{Card}\{k : w_{ik} \neq 1\} \geq j$ . In this case,  $i$  is an index appearing in the description of  $\mu_j$ .

*Case 2.*  $\text{Card}\{k : w_{ik} \neq 1\} = l + 1 < j$ . In this case,  $i$  appears in the descriptions of  $\mu_1, \dots, \mu_{l+1}$  but in only  $l$  of the  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{j-1}$ .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Let  $L$  be an alphabet. Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  and  $D' = (w'_1, w'_2, \dots, w'_n)$  be Young diagrams on  $L$  having the same shapes. Suppose that

$$w_i = x_{i1}x_{i2}\cdots x_{i\lambda_i} \quad \text{and} \quad w'_i = x'_{i1}x'_{i2}\cdots x'_{i\lambda_i}.$$

We order the row sequences  $(x'_{11}, x'_{12}, \dots, x'_{1\lambda_1}, x'_{21}, \dots)$  and  $(x_{11}, x_{12}, \dots, x_{1\lambda_1}, x_{21}, \dots)$  lexicographically. We say that for  $D' < D$  if in this order, the sequence for  $D'$  is less than the sequence for  $D$ .



PROPOSITION 14. Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$  and  $D' = (w'_1, w'_2, \dots, w'_n)$  be standard Young diagrams, having the same shape  $\lambda = (\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ , on an alphabet  $L$ . Suppose that there exists a Gale-Ryser matrix  $W = (w_{ij})$  which interpolates  $D$  and  $\tilde{D}'$ . Then either  $D' < D$  or  $D' = D$  and  $w_j = w_{1j}w_{2j} \cdots w_{\lambda_j j}$  for each  $j = 1, \dots, n$ .

PROOF. We proceed by induction on  $n$ , the case  $n = 1$  being immediate. Otherwise, let

$$w_i = x_{i1}x_{i2} \cdots x_{i\lambda_i}, \quad w'_i = x'_{i1}x'_{i2} \cdots x'_{i\lambda_i}$$

and  $\tilde{D}' = (u'_1, \dots, u'_{\lambda_1})$  where  $u'_r = x'_{1r}x'_{2r} \cdots$ . Since  $W$  exists, we note that  $D$  and  $D'$  have the same content.

Let  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m$  be the distinct elements in  $L$  appearing in  $D$  and suppose that  $x_1 < x_2 < \cdots < x_m$ . Since  $D$  is standard, negative elements cannot be repeated in the rows of  $D$  and positive elements cannot be repeated in the columns of  $D$ . (The same holds for  $D'$ .)

If  $x_1$  is negative, then  $x_1$  can only appear once in  $w_1$ ; also, among the  $u'_r$ ,  $x_1$  can only appear in  $u'_1$ . Therefore,  $w_{11} = x_1 = x_{11} = x'_{11}$ .

If  $x_1$  is positive, then let  $\text{cont}(w_1; x_1) = k \geq 1$ . If  $x_1$  appears in  $u'_r$ ,  $r > k$ , then  $x_1 = x'_{11} = \cdots = x'_{1r}$  and  $D' < D$ . Otherwise,  $x_1$  appears only in  $u'_1, \dots, u'_k$  and

$$x_1 = w_{11} = \cdots = w_{k1} = x_{11} = \cdots = x_{1k} = x'_{11} = \cdots = x'_{1k}.$$

Next, let  $x_i$  be the smallest element after  $x_1$  appearing in  $w_1$ . We shall assume that

$$(*) \quad x_1 = w_{11} = \cdots = w_{k1} = x_{11} = \cdots = x_{1k} = x'_{11} = \cdots = x'_{1k},$$

where  $k = 1$  if  $x_1$  is negative.

First, suppose that  $x_i$  is negative. If  $x_i$  appears in  $u'_r$ ,  $r > k + 1$ , then  $x'_{1k+1} < x_i$  and  $D' < D$ . Otherwise,  $x_i$  appears only in  $u'_1, \dots, u'_{k+1}$ . Since  $(*)$  holds, we must have  $w_{k+1,1} = x_i$ . Now,  $x'_{1k+1} \leq x_i$ . If  $x'_{1k+1} < x_i$  then  $D' < D$ . Otherwise, we have  $x'_{1k+1} = x_{1k+1} = w_{k+1,1}$ .

Second, let us assume that  $x_i$  is positive and that  $\text{cont}(w_1; x_i) = l \geq 1$ . If  $x_i$  appears in  $u'_r$ ,  $r > k + l$ , then  $x'_{1r} \leq x_i$  and  $D' < D$ . Otherwise,  $x_i$  only appears among  $u'_j$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, k + l$ . Since  $(*)$  holds, we must have

$$w_{k+l+1} = \cdots = w_{k+l+1} = x_i = x_{1k+1} = \cdots = x_{1k+l}.$$

Also,  $x'_{1j} \leq x_i$  for  $j = k + 1, \dots, k + l$ . If some  $x'_{1j} < x_i$ , we have  $D' < D$ .

We may continue on in this way to show that either  $D' < D$  or  $D' = D$  and  $w_1 = w'_1 = w_{11} \cdots w_{\lambda_1, 1}$ . In the latter case, the matrix  $(w_{ij})$ ,  $j \geq 2$ , interpolates  $D_1 = (w_2, \dots, w_n)$  and  $\tilde{D}'_1$  where  $D'_1 = (w'_2, \dots, w'_n)$ . We may now apply the induction hypothesis to complete the proof.

**5. Proof of Theorem 8, (iv).** Throughout this section, we shall let  $L$  and  $P$  be disjoint alphabets. Before giving the proof of Theorem 8, (iv), we need one more result.

PROPOSITION 15. Let  $D, D'$  be standard Young diagrams on  $L$  and let  $E, E'$  be standard Young diagrams on  $P$ .

(a) Then  $\langle \text{Tab}^+(D' | E'), \text{Tab}(D | E) \rangle = 0$  unless both  $(D, \tilde{D}')$  and  $(E, \tilde{E}')$  are Gale-Ryser pairs.

(b) Also,  $\langle \text{Tab}^+(D | E), \text{Tab}(D | E) \rangle = \pm 1$ .

PROOF. Let  $P^1, P^2, \dots, P^r$  be the biproducts such that  $\text{Tab}(D | E) = P^1 P^2 \cdots P^r$  and, similarly, let  $\text{Tab}^+(D' | E') = N^1 N^2 \cdots N^s$ . We apply formulas (a) and (b) of §3 to see that

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \text{Tab}^+(D' | E'), \text{Tab}(D | E) \rangle &= \langle N^1 N^2 \cdots N^s, P^1 P^2 \cdots P^r \rangle \\ &= \sum_{P^1, \dots, P^r} \pm \langle N^1, P^1_{(1)} \cdots P^r_{(1)} \rangle \cdots \langle N^s, P^1_{(s)} \cdots P^r_{(s)} \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the fact that

$$\Delta^{(s)}(P^1 \cdots P^r) = \Delta^{(s)}(P^1) \cdots \Delta^{(s)}(P^r).$$

Continuing on, we see that this is the sum over all  $P^1, \dots, P^r, N^1, \dots, N^s$  of terms

$$\begin{aligned} (\neq) \quad & \pm \langle N^1_{(1)}, P^1_{(1)} \rangle \langle N^1_{(2)}, P^2_{(1)} \rangle \cdots \langle N^1_{(r)}, P^r_{(1)} \rangle \\ & \times \langle N^2_{(1)}, P^1_{(2)} \rangle \langle N^2_{(2)}, P^2_{(2)} \rangle \cdots \langle N^s_{(r)}, P^r_{(s)} \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

According to Proposition 12, all the expressions  $\langle N^i_{(j)}, P^j_{(i)} \rangle$  are 0 unless  $\text{Length}(N^i_{(j)}) = \text{Length}(P^j_{(i)}) \leq 1$ . Furthermore, if this expression is not 0, then

$$N^i_{(j)} = (x^* | y^*) \text{ and } P^j_{(i)} = (x | y).$$

Now, let us suppose that  $\langle \text{Tab}^+(D' | E'), \text{Tab}(D | E) \rangle$  is not zero. Then, there is a nonzero term of the form  $(\neq)$  in the expansion above. For such a term, let us put  $w_{ij} = x$  if  $P^j_{(i)} = (x | y)$ . We shall show that the matrix  $W = (w_{ij})$  interpolates the pair  $(D, \tilde{D}')$ .

To see this, let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots)$ ,  $D' = (w'_1, w'_2, \dots)$ , and  $\tilde{D}' = (u'_1, u'_2, \dots)$ . Then, for each  $x \in L$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cont}(w_{1j} w_{2j} \cdots)(x) &= \sum_i \text{cont } w_{ij}(x) = \sum_i \text{Cont } P^j_{(i)}(x) \\ &= \text{Cont}(P^j_{(1)} \cdots)(x) = \text{Cont } P^j(x) = \text{cont } w_j(x). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cont}(w_{i1} w_{i2} \cdots)(x) &= \sum_j \text{cont } w_{ij}(x) = \sum_j \text{Cont } P^j_{(i)}(x) \\ &= \sum_j \text{Cont } N^i_{(j)}(x^*) = \text{Cont } N^i(x^*) = \text{cont } u'_i(x). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $w_{ij}$  interpolates  $(D, \tilde{D}')$ . In a similar manner, we may find a matrix which interpolates  $(E, \tilde{E}')$ . This completes the proof of (a).

Next, we prove (b). First, let us introduce some notation and write  $D = (w_1, \dots, w_n)$  and  $E = (u_1, \dots, u_n)$ , where  $w_i = x_{i1} \cdots x_{i\lambda_i}$  and  $u_i = \alpha_{i1} \cdots \alpha_{i\lambda_i}$ . We shall use the notation introduced in the first part of this proof, e.g.,

$$P^j = (\text{stand}(w_j) \mid \text{stand}(u_j)).$$

Now, we apply Proposition 7 (Chapter 2) to the expansions of  $\Delta^{(\lambda_1)}(P^j)$  and  $\Delta^{(n)}(N^i)$ . According to Proposition 7, in these expansions there is one and only one nonzero term such that

$$P_{(i)}^j = (x_{ji} \mid \alpha_{ji}) \quad \text{and} \quad N_{(j)}^i = (x_{ji}^* \mid \alpha_{ji}^*).$$

The corresponding term ( $\neq$ ) in the expansion of  $\langle \text{Tab}^+(D \mid E), \text{Tab}(D \mid E) \rangle$  equals  $\pm 1$ . But this is the only possible nonzero term in the expansion according to Proposition 14. (Any nonzero term gives an interpolating matrix which is unique by Proposition 14.)

This completes the proof of Proposition 15.

PROOF OF THEOREM 8, (iv). We begin by ordering pairs  $(D, E)$  of Young diagrams, where  $D$  and  $E$  have the same shape, according to the following rules.

(i) If  $D$  has shape  $\lambda$  and  $D'$  has shape  $\lambda'$  and if  $\lambda < \lambda'$ , then  $(D, E) < (D', E')$ .

(ii) If  $D$  and  $D'$  have the same shape, then  $(D, E) < (D', E')$  if in the lexicographic ordering on the word sequences for  $(D, E)$  and  $(D', E')$ ,  $(D, E)$  is larger than  $(D', E')$ .

Now suppose (in the terminology of Theorem 8) that

$$\text{Tab}(D \mid E) = \sum_i c_i \text{Tab}(D_i \mid E_i),$$

where the diagram pairs  $(D_i \mid E_i)$  are ordered from smallest to largest. Then

$$\langle \text{Tab}^+(D_j \mid E_j), \text{Tab}(D \mid E) \rangle = \sum_i c_i \langle \text{Tab}^+(D_j \mid E_j), \text{Tab}(D_i \mid E_i) \rangle.$$

According to Propositions 13, 14, and 15 these equations for the  $c_i$  give a triangular system of linear equations with  $\pm 1$  entries on the diagonal. Thus, the system has a unique solution. This completes the proof.

## 4. Invariant Theory

**0. Introduction.** In this chapter we prove the fundamental result of invariant theory for both symmetric and skew-symmetric tensors, namely, the fact that all invariants can be symbolically represented by polynomials in brackets. Even though the field is assumed to be of characteristic zero, the result given below is new for skew-symmetric tensors (a previous attempt by Weitzenböck to develop a symbolic calculus contains an inconsistency, as we show in detail in the next chapter). We give here an informal description of the symbolic method. A symmetric tensor in a vector space  $V$  over a fixed  $K$  can be written, relative to a basis  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$  of  $V$ , in the form

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \sum_{j_1 \cdots j_n} \binom{k}{j_1 \cdots j_n} t_{j_1 \cdots j_n} e_1^{j_1} \cdots e_n^{j_n} \\ &= \sum_{j_1 \cdots j_n} \binom{k}{j_1 \cdots j_n} (t \mid j_1 \cdots j_n) e_1^{j_1} \cdots e_n^{j_n}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $t_{j_1 \cdots j_n} = (t \mid j_1 \cdots j_n)$  are the *coordinates* of the tensor  $t$ . The tensor is a homogeneous element of degree  $k$  (or step  $k$ , as we shall say) of the symmetric algebra over the vector space  $V$ .

Similarly, a skew-symmetric tensor is an element of step  $k$  of the exterior algebra over the vector space  $V$ . Relative to the given basis, we can write

$$t = \sum_{j_1 < j_2 < \cdots < j_k} (t \mid j_1 j_2 \cdots j_k) e_{j_1} e_{j_2} \cdots e_{j_k},$$

where the exterior product is indicated by juxtaposition.

The idea is to view the coordinates  $(t \mid j_1 \cdots j_k)$  as the images under the action of a linear functional, which we call the umbral linear functional, of the letters of an alphabet  $\text{Div}[L \mid P]$ . The set  $P = P^-$  will consist of the letters  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ , the letters of  $L^+$  will name the skew-symmetric tensors, and the letters of  $L^-$  will name the symmetric tensors. The crucial feature of the symbolic method is the use of several distinct letters for the same tensor. Thus, for  $a \in L^+$ , we set

$$U((a^{(k)} \mid j_1 \cdots j_k)) = (t \mid j_1 \cdots j_k),$$

and for  $a \in L^-$  we set

$$U((a | 1)^{j_1} \cdots (a | n)^{j_n}) = (t | j_1 \cdots j_n).$$

We say that the letter  $a$  is a *symbol* for the tensor  $t$ . One defines the bracket

$$[w] = (w | 12 \cdots n), \quad w \in L,$$

and one proves that every invariant, or every joint invariant of a set of tensors, can be written as the image of a bracket polynomial under the action of the umbral linear functional. Detailed applications of the method are worked out in the next chapter.

We note the fact that in the umbral representation skew-symmetric tensors are represented by positively signed letters and symmetric tensors by negatively signed letters. Because of this fact, the computation of invariants for skew-symmetric tensors turns out to be simpler than for symmetric tensors.

**1. Definitions.** Let  $K$  be an infinite field; let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over  $K$ ; and let  $\{w_1, \dots, w_m\}$  be any basis for  $W$ . Let  $K[X_1, \dots, X_m]$  be the polynomial algebra in  $m$  variables  $X_1, \dots, X_m$  over  $K$ . A function  $f: W \rightarrow K$  is called a *polynomial function on  $W$*  if there is a polynomial  $p \in K[X_1, \dots, X_m]$  such that for every  $w \in W$ ,  $w = \sum_{i=1}^m a_i w_i$ , we have  $f(w) = p(a_1, \dots, a_m)$ . It is easy to see that this definition does not depend on the choice of a basis for  $W$ . We shall denote the algebra of all polynomial functions on  $W$  by  $K[W]$ .

Next let  $G$  be a group which acts on  $W$  via a representation  $\rho: G \rightarrow \text{GL}(W)$ . The action of  $G$  on  $W$  gives rise to an action of  $G$  on  $K[W]$  by defining  $(\gamma \cdot f)(w) = f(\rho(\gamma)^{-1}w)$  for all  $\gamma \in G$ ,  $f \in K[W]$ ,  $w \in W$ .

*Note.* The algebra  $K[W]$  is (naturally) isomorphic to  $K[X_1, \dots, X_m]$ . Also, if  $\rho(\gamma^{-1})w_i = \sum_{j=1}^m c_{ji} w_j$ , then  $\gamma \cdot X_k = \sum_{i=1}^m c_{ki} X_i$ . The action of  $G$  on  $K[W]$  has the following properties.

- (i) If  $e$  is the identity in  $G$ , then  $e \cdot f = f$  for all  $f \in K[W]$ .
- (ii) If  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2 \in G$ , then  $(\gamma_1 \gamma_2) \cdot f = \gamma_1 \cdot (\gamma_2 \cdot f)$  for all  $f \in K[W]$ .
- (iii) For each  $\gamma \in G$ , the mapping  $f \rightarrow \gamma \cdot f$  defines an automorphism of  $K[W]$ .

Let  $K^*$  denote the multiplicative group of nonzero elements in  $K$  and let  $\chi: G \rightarrow K^*$  be a homomorphism of  $G$ . An element  $f \in K[W]$  is called a (*relative*) *invariant*, corresponding to  $\chi$ , if  $\gamma \cdot f = \chi(\gamma)f$  for all  $\gamma \in G$ . If  $\chi = 1$ , we sometimes call  $f$  an *absolute invariant*.

We shall be interested, here, in the group  $G = \text{GL}_n(K)$  and certain (explicit) actions of  $G$  which we now describe. Let  $V$  be a vector space of dimension  $n$  over the field  $K$  and let  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  be a given basis for  $V$ . In the usual way, we may identify  $\text{GL}(V)$  with  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  using this basis.

A *skew-symmetric tensor of step  $k$*  is an element of the  $k$ th homogeneous component  $\wedge^k(V)$  of the exterior algebra  $\wedge(V)$ . Relative to the given basis, we

have

$$t = \sum_{i_1 < \cdots < i_k} a_{i_1 \cdots i_k} e_{i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge e_{i_k}$$

where  $a_{i_1 \cdots i_k} \in K$ . We shall denote the corresponding coordinate functions by  $t_{i_1 \cdots i_k}$  so, in the notation just given,

$$t_{i_1 \cdots i_k}(t) = a_{i_1 \cdots i_k}.$$

An element  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  induces a linear transformation  $\wedge^k(N): \wedge^k(V) \rightarrow \wedge^k(V)$ . We may rephrase our basic definition in this context as follows. A polynomial  $I(t)$  in the variables  $t_{i_1 \cdots i_k}$  is said to be an *invariant* when there is a positive integer  $g$  such that

$$I(\wedge^k(N)t) = (\det N)^g I(t)$$

for all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ ,  $t \in \wedge^k(V)$ . Sometimes we call such a polynomial an invariant of skew-symmetric tensors  $t$  of step  $k$  or, more simply, an invariant of  $t$ . The major goal of these lectures will be to describe explicitly all such invariants.

We shall also be interested in actions of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on the symmetric algebra  $S(V)$ . A *symmetric tensor of step  $k$*  is an element of the  $k$ th homogeneous component  $S^k(V)$  of the symmetric algebra  $S(V)$ . Relative to the given basis  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  of  $V$ , we may write

$$t = \sum_{\substack{j_1, \dots, j_n \\ j_1 + \cdots + j_n = k}} \binom{k}{j_1 \cdots j_n} a_{j_1 \cdots j_n} e_1^{j_1} \cdots e_n^{j_n}$$

where  $a_{j_1 \cdots j_n} \in K$ . We shall assume that each multinomial coefficient appearing above is nonzero in  $K$ . We shall denote the corresponding coordinate functions by  $t_{j_1 \cdots j_n}$  so, in the notation just given,

$$t_{j_1 \cdots j_n}(t) = a_{j_1 \cdots j_n}.$$

An element  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  induces a linear transformation  $S^k(N): S^k(V) \rightarrow S^k(V)$ . Then, a polynomial  $I(t)$  in the variables  $t_{j_1 \cdots j_n}$  is said to be an *invariant* when there is a positive integer  $g$  such that

$$I(S^k(N)t) = (\det N)^g I(t)$$

for all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ ,  $t \in S^k(V)$ . Sometimes we shall call such a polynomial an invariant of symmetric tensors of step  $k$  or, more simply, an invariant of  $t$ .

The actions above extend to actions of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on products

$$(+)$$

$$W = \wedge^{k_1}(V) \times \cdots \times \wedge^{k_r}(V) \times S^{h_1}(V) \times \cdots \times S^{h_p}(V);$$

namely,

$$N \cdot (w_1, \dots, w_r, w'_1, \dots, w'_p) = (Nw_1, \dots, Nw_r, Nw'_1, \dots, Nw'_p).$$

So, we may speak of invariants in this setting; namely, a polynomial  $I$  in  $K[W]$  is called invariant (or, in the classical terminology, *joint invariant*) if there is a positive integer  $g$  so that

$$I(Nw) = (\det N)^g I(w)$$

for all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ ,  $w \in W$ . In actions on such  $W$ , we shall always assume that each multinomial coefficient  $\binom{h}{j_1 j_2 \dots j_n}$  is nonzero in  $K$  if some  $S^h(V)$ ,  $h > 1$ , appears among the components of  $W$ .

**2. The action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ .** Let  $L$  be a proper signed set (where  $L^-$  may be empty). Let  $P = P^- = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  be a proper signed set, disjoint from  $L$ , with  $1 < 2 < \dots < n$ . We construct the algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  as in Chapter 2. It is important to notice that there are no positive elements in  $[L | P]$ . We shall now define an action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ .

Let  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  with, say,  $N^{-1}e_j = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij}e_i$ . We define a  $K$ -algebra automorphism of  $\text{Tens}[L | P] \otimes K$  by  $N(x | i) = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}(x | j)$ . We note in passing that  $N_1(N_2(x | i)) = (N_1N_2)(x | i)$  for all  $N_1, N_2 \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ .

Next, let  $I$  be the ideal in  $\text{Tens}[L | P]$  which defines  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . Then  $N$  sends  $I \otimes K$  to itself (as is easily checked) and, so, defines a mapping, also denoted by  $N$ , of  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  to itself.

*Note.* According to Theorem 8, a basis for the  $Z$ -algebra  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  consists of all  $\text{Tab}(D | E)$  where  $D, E$  are standard. Then (according to a standard theorem on tensor products), the  $\text{Tab}(D | E)$  forms a basis for the  $K$ -vector space  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ .

**THEOREM 16.** *Let  $w$  be a word in  $\text{Super}[L]$  having  $\text{Length} = n$ . Let  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ . Then*

$$N(w | 12 \dots n) = (\det N)^{-1}(w | 12 \dots n).$$

**PROOF.** According to formula (b), Chapter 2, §2, we have

$$(w | 12 \dots n) = \sum_w \pm (w_{(1)} | 1) \cdots (w_{(n)} | n).$$

Hence,  $N(w | 12 \dots n)$  is

$$\sum \pm a_{1j_1} \cdots a_{nj_n} (w_{(1)} | j_1) \cdots (w_{(n)} | j_n),$$

where the sum is over  $w$  and all  $j_1, \dots, j_n$ . This expression equals

$$\sum_{j_1, \dots, j_n} a_{1j_1} \cdots a_{nj_n} (w | j_1 \cdots j_n).$$

Since all the  $j$ 's are negative, the term  $(w | j_1 \cdots j_n)$  is 0 unless the  $j$ 's are distinct, i.e.,  $j_1 = \sigma(1), \dots, j_n = \sigma(n)$ , where  $\sigma$  is some permutation of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Therefore, the preceding sum is

$$\sum_{\sigma} a_{1\sigma(1)} \cdots a_{n\sigma(n)} \text{sgn}(\sigma) (w | 12 \dots n) = (\det N)^{-1}(w | 12 \dots n).$$

This completes the proof of Theorem 16.

Let  $E = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_g)$  be the Young diagram on  $P$  where each  $u_i$  is  $12 \dots n$ . Let  $D_1, \dots, D_r$  be standard Young diagrams on  $L$  having the same shape as  $E$ . Let  $F' \in \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ ,

$$(*) \quad F' = \sum_{s=1}^r c_s \text{Tab}(D_s | E)$$

where each  $c_s \in K$ . Applying Theorem 16, we see that

$$N \cdot F' = (\det N)^{-g} F'$$

for each  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ .

**THEOREM 17.** *Let  $F' \in \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  satisfy  $N \cdot F' = (\det N)^{-g} F'$  for each  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ . Then  $F'$  has the form  $(*)$  above.*

**PROOF.** Using the straightening formula (Theorem 8), we may write

$$(**) \quad F' = \sum_s c_s \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s)$$

where  $c_s \in K^*$  and  $D_s, E_s$  are standard.

For fixed  $j$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , let  $j(s)$  be the number of times  $j$  appears in  $E_s$ , that is (in the terminology of §1, Chapter 3),

$$j(s) = \text{Cont}(\text{Tab}(D_s | E_s))(j) = \text{cont}(E_s)(j).$$

Now, let  $b$  be any element in  $K^*$  and define  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  as

$$N^{-1}e_i = e_i \quad \text{if } i \neq j \quad \text{and} \quad N^{-1}e_j = be_j.$$

Then

$$N(x | i) = (x | i) \quad \text{if } i \neq j \quad \text{and} \quad N(x | j) = b(x | j).$$

We apply  $N$  to (\*\*), always bearing in mind property (3), §1, Chapter 3. Then

$$b^g F' = \sum_s c_s b^{j(s)} \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s).$$

Comparing coefficients of  $\text{Tab}(D_s | E_s)$  and remembering that  $K$  is infinite, we see that each  $j(s)$  is equal to  $g$ .

Since each  $j$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , appears  $g$  times in each  $E_s$ , the minimum number of rows of  $E_s$  is  $g$ . If each  $E_s$  has exactly  $g$  rows, then  $E_s = E$  and we are finished.

Otherwise, let us look at an  $E_s$  having more than  $g$  rows. Since  $E_s$  is standard, all the 1's occur in the first column. Let  $l$  be the first number in the first column following the run of  $g$  1's. Then, all of the numbers 1 to  $l-1$  occur in the first  $g$  rows of  $E_s$ . Moreover, if  $q$  is the number of  $l$ 's in the first column, the remaining

$g - q$   $l$ 's must all occur in the first  $g - q$  rows. This situation is summarized by

$$g \left\{ \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & \dots & l-1 & l & \dots \\ & & \dots & & \\ 1 & \dots & l-1 & l & \dots \\ q \left\{ \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & \dots & l-1 & m & \dots \\ & & \dots & & \\ 1 & & l-1 & & \\ & & l & & \\ q \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \vdots & & \\ l & \dots & \\ \vdots & & \end{array} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$$

where  $m \geq l + 1$ . Such an  $E_s$  will be called an  $l$ -critical diagram of parameter  $q$ .

Let  $j$  be the smallest index such that there exists a  $j$ -critical tableau in the expansion of  $F'$ . We break up the expansion of  $F'$  into

$$F' = \sum_s c_s \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s) + \sum_t c_t \text{Tab}(D_t | E_t) + G,$$

where the first summation is over all the indices  $s$  such that  $E_s$  is  $j$ -critical, the second summation is over all  $t$  such that  $E_t$  is  $l$ -critical for some  $l > j$ , and  $G$  is the linear combination of all the  $\text{Tab}(D_s | E_s)$  where  $E_s = E$ .

Let  $b \in K^*$ . We define  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  by  $N^{-1}e_j = be_{j-1} + e_j$ ,  $N^{-1}e_k = e_k$  for  $k \neq j$ . Then,

$$N(x | j-1) = (x | j-1) + b(x | j), \quad N(x | k) = (x | k) \quad \text{for } k \neq j-1.$$

If  $w \in \text{Super}[L]$ , then  $N$  fixes an expression like  $(w | \dots j-1 j \dots)$ . Indeed, applying formula (b), §2, Chapter 2, we see that  $N$  sends  $(w | \dots j-1 j \dots)$  to

$$(w | \dots j-1 j \dots) + b(w | \dots j j \dots).$$

The second term is 0 since  $j^2 = 0$ .

With this in mind, we apply  $N$  to  $F'$  and see that  $N$  fixes each term in the second summation and each term in  $G$ . For the  $j$ -critical  $E_s$ , we have

$$N \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s) = \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s) + \sum_r b^{e(r)} \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s^r),$$

where  $E_s^r$  has the form

$$g \left\{ \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & \dots & j-1 & j & \dots \\ & & \dots & & \\ 1 & \dots & j-1 & j & \dots \\ q \left\{ \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & \dots & * & m & \dots \\ & & \dots & & \\ 1 & \dots & * & & \dots \\ q \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} j & \dots & \\ \vdots & & \\ j & \dots & \\ \vdots & & \end{array} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$$

where  $e(r)$  of the  $*$  are  $j$ ,  $e(r) \geq 1$ , and the rest of the  $*$  are  $j-1$ . The largest  $e(r)$  is  $q$  and this occurs when all the  $*$  are chosen to be  $j$ ; let us denote this (standard) Young diagram by  $E_s''$ .

Now we consider the equation  $N \cdot F' = F'$ . Since  $K$  is infinite, we may think of this as a polynomial in  $b$  and set the various coefficients equal to 0. Let  $q'$  be the largest possible parameter appearing in the  $j$ -critical diagrams. Then the highest power of  $b$  is  $b^{q'}$  and its coefficient is  $\sum_s c_s \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s'')$  where the sum is over all pairs  $(D_s, E_s)$  where  $E_s$  is  $j$ -critical of parameter  $q'$ . We conclude that  $\sum_s c_s \text{Tab}(D_s | E_s'') = 0$ ; since all the  $D_s$  and  $E_s''$  are standard, we have  $c_s = 0$ , contradicting our original assumption (i.e.,  $c_s \in K^*$ ).

**3. The umbral linear functional.** Throughout this section, we fix an action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on a vector space  $W$  having the form

$$(+)$$

$$W = \bigwedge^{k_1}(V) \times \dots \times \bigwedge^{k_r}(V) \times S^{h_1}(V) \times \dots \times S^{h_p}(V).$$

As always, we shall assume that each  $\binom{h}{j_1 \dots j_n}$  is nonzero in  $K$ , if some  $S^h(V)$ ,  $h > 1$ , appears among the components of  $W$ . Also, if  $V$ , itself, appears among the components of  $W$ , then we shall assume it is written as  $\bigwedge^1(V)$ .

Given such an action, we shall assume that we have available an infinite alphabet  $L$  which satisfies the following conditions.

(L1) There is a subset  $L_\infty$  of  $L$  so that both  $L_\infty^+$  and  $L_\infty^-$  are infinite.

(L2) There is a subset  $L'_\infty$  of  $L_\infty^+$  such that  $L_\infty^+ - L'_\infty$  is infinite. Furthermore, each  $a \in (L - L_\infty) \cup L'_\infty$  is associated to one and only one of the components of  $W$ , i.e., an  $S^h(V)$  or a  $\bigwedge^k(V)$ . We say that  $a$  belongs to this component.

(L3) Each component of  $W$  has infinitely many elements belonging to it.

(L4) If  $a \in L$  belongs to an  $S^h(V)$ ,  $h > 1$ , then  $a \in L^-$ ,  $a \notin L_\infty$ .

(L5) If  $a \in L$  belongs to a  $\bigwedge^k(V)$ ,  $k > 1$ , then  $a \in L^+$ ,  $a \notin L_\infty$ .

(L6) If  $a \in L$  belongs to a copy of  $V$  (i.e., some  $\bigwedge^1(V)$ ), then  $a \in L'_\infty$ .

Let  $P = P' = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  be a finite signed alphabet with  $1 < 2 < \dots < n$ . The umbral linear functional  $U: \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K \rightarrow K[W]$ , denoted by  $f \rightarrow \langle U, f \rangle$ , is defined as follows.

(1) Let  $a$  belong to some  $\Lambda^k(V)$ . Then  $\langle U, (a^{(k)} | i_1 \dots i_k) \rangle$  is the coordinate function  $t_{i_1 \dots i_k}$  on that component  $\Lambda^k(V)$ . If  $j \neq k$ , then  $\langle U, (a^{(j)} | i_1 \dots i_j) \rangle$  is 0.

(2) Let  $a$  belong to some  $S^h(V)$ . If  $j_1 + j_2 + \dots + j_n = h$ , then

$$\langle U, (a | 1)^{j_1} (a | 2)^{j_2} \dots (a | n)^{j_n} \rangle$$

is the coordinate function  $t_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_n}$  on that component  $S^h(V)$ . If  $j_1 + j_2 + \dots + j_n \neq h$ , then  $\langle U, (a | 1)^{j_1} (a | 2)^{j_2} \dots (a | n)^{j_n} \rangle$  is 0.

(3) Let  $a \in L_\infty$  and suppose that  $a$  does not belong to any component of  $W$ . Then  $\langle U, (a | i_1) \dots (a | i_k) \rangle$  is 0.

(4) Let us order  $[L | P]$  by saying  $(x | \alpha) < (x' | \alpha')$  if either  $x < x'$  or  $x = x'$  and  $\alpha < \alpha'$ . As usual, we choose a basis of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  consisting of words  $(z_1 | \gamma_1) \dots (z_n | \gamma_n)$  but now we shall also assume that  $(z_1 | \gamma_1) \leq (z_2 | \gamma_2) \leq \dots \leq (z_n | \gamma_n)$ .

The umbral linear functional  $U$  is defined on such an element by:

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle U, (x | \gamma_{i_1}) \dots (x | \gamma_{i_p}) (y | \gamma_{j_1}) \dots (y | \gamma_{j_q}) \dots \rangle \\ & = \langle U, (x | \gamma_{i_1}) \dots (x | \gamma_{i_p}) \rangle \cdot \langle U, (y | \gamma_{j_1}) \dots (y | \gamma_{j_q}) \rangle \dots \end{aligned}$$

where  $x < y < \dots$ ,  $\gamma_{i_1} \leq \gamma_{i_2} \leq \dots \leq \gamma_{i_p}$ ,  $\gamma_{j_1} \leq \dots \leq \gamma_{j_q}, \dots$ , and the individual terms are calculated using rules (1), (2), and (3).

It follows that  $U$  is well defined by these rules. The following properties of  $U$  will also be important later.

(U1) The mapping  $U$  is onto  $K[W]$ .

(U2) For all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ ,  $f \in \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ , we have  $\langle U, Nf \rangle = N \langle U, f \rangle$ .

PROOF. To prove (U1), we need only notice that the coordinate functions on  $\Lambda^k(V)$  are the images under  $U$  of the various  $(a^{(k)} | i_1 \dots i_k)$  and that the coordinate functions on  $S^h(V)$  are the images under  $U$  of the various  $(a | 1)^{j_1} \dots (a | n)^{j_n}$ .

To prove (2), we may assume that  $f$  is a monomial consisting of products of terms having either the form  $(a^{(k)} | i_1 \dots i_k)$  or  $(a | 1)^{j_1} \dots (a | n)^{j_n}$ . That (2) holds for such terms individually follows by a direct (and somewhat tedious) computation which we omit. That (2) holds for  $f$  then follows from the definition of  $U$ , in particular (4).

**4. The first fundamental theorem.** We shall continue to follow the notation introduced in §3. In addition, throughout this section, we shall assume that the characteristic of the field  $K$  is 0. If  $w \in \text{Super}[L]$ , let us define  $[w] \in \text{Super}[L | P]$  to be  $(w | 12 \dots n)$ . An element  $p \in \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  is called a *bracket monomial* if  $p = [w_1] \dots [w_k]$  and a *bracket polynomial* if it is a linear combination of bracket monomials.

**THEOREM 18.** *If  $\text{char } K = 0$ , then every (joint, relative) invariant of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  acting on  $W$  can be written as  $\langle U, p \rangle$  where  $p$  is a bracket polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ .*

PROOF. Let  $F' \in \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  satisfy  $N \cdot F' = (\det N)^{-g} F'$  for each  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ . According to Theorem 17,  $F'$  is a bracket polynomial. Furthermore,

$$N \langle U, F' \rangle = \langle U, N \cdot F' \rangle = (\det N)^{-g} \langle U, F' \rangle.$$

To finish the proof, we need only show that each invariant polynomial in  $K[W]$  is the image under  $U$  of an invariant polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ . This fact follows immediately from the complete reducibility of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$ . However, we can give a complete proof, using the ideas developed in this monograph, and avoiding the appeal to representation theory. We turn to this argument now.

1) There is a  $K$ -algebra homomorphism  $\varphi$  from  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  to  $\text{Super}[L^* | P^*] \otimes K$  which extends the mapping  $(x | \alpha) \rightarrow (x^* | \alpha^*)$ . Furthermore,  $\Delta\varphi = (\varphi \otimes \varphi)\Delta$ .

PROOF. The mapping  $(x | \alpha) \rightarrow (x^* | \alpha^*)$  gives a homomorphism of  $\text{Tens}[L | P] \otimes K$  to  $\text{Super}[L^* | P^*] \otimes K$  which factors through  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ . The equality  $\Delta\varphi = (\varphi \otimes \varphi)\Delta$  holds on the generators  $(x | \alpha)$  of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  and, hence, is true in general since all the maps are algebra homomorphisms.

2) For basis words  $w, w' \in \text{Super}[L | P]$ , we define  $(w, w') = \langle \varphi(w), w' \rangle$  where the expression on the right-hand side is the scalar product of §3, Chapter 3. We extend this scalar product to  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ . Let

$$w = (x_1 | \alpha_1)^{e_1} \dots (x_r | \alpha_r)^{e_r} (y_1 | \beta_1) \dots (y_k | \beta_k),$$

where  $x_i \in L^-, y_j \in L^+$ , and the  $(x_1 | \alpha_1), \dots, (y_k | \beta_k)$  are distinct. Then  $(w, w') = 0$  if  $w \neq w'$  and

$$(w, w) = e_1! \dots e_r! \text{sign}(1/2(k-1)k).$$

PROOF. If  $w$  and  $w'$  are of different lengths, then  $(w, w') = 0$ . So, we may assume that  $\text{Length } w = \text{Length } w' = n$  with, say,  $w' = w'_1 w'_2 \dots w'_n$  and  $\text{Length } w'_i = 1$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (w, w') & = \langle \varphi(w), w' \rangle \\ & = \sum_{\varphi(w)} \text{sign} \left( \sum_{i>j} |\varphi(w)_{(i)}| |w'_j| \right) \langle \varphi(w)_{(1)}, w'_1 \rangle \dots \langle \varphi(w)_{(n)}, w'_n \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

For a term in this summation to be nonzero, we need  $\varphi(w)_{(i)} = \varphi(w'_i)$  for each  $i = 1, \dots, n$ . But then

$$\text{Cont } \varphi(w) = \sum_i \text{Cont } \varphi(w)_{(i)} = \sum_i \text{Cont } \varphi(w'_i) = \text{Cont } \varphi(w')$$

and, so,  $w = w'$ . Now we calculate  $(w, w)$ . If  $x \in L^-$ , we have

$$\varphi(x | \alpha)^e = (x^* | \alpha^*) \dots (x^* | \alpha^*) = e!(x^* | \alpha^*)^{(e)}.$$

Therefore, in the expansion of  $\Delta^{(n)}(\varphi(w))$ , the term

$$(x_1^* | \alpha_1^*) \otimes \cdots \otimes (x_r^* | \alpha_r^*) \otimes (y_1^* | \beta_1^*) \otimes \cdots \otimes (y_k^* | \beta_k^*)$$

appears once and only once and has coefficient  $e_1! \cdots e_r!$

3) Let  $V$  be any finite-dimensional subspace of  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  spanned by basis words. The restriction of  $(, )$  to  $V$  is a nondegenerate, symmetric, bilinear form on  $V$ . (This follows from 2.) Furthermore, for any  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ ,  $w, w' \in \text{Super}[L | P]$ , we have  $({}^t Nw, w') = (w, Nw')$ .

PROOF. The group  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  acts on  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  and its tensor products. Furthermore,  $(N \otimes N)\Delta = \Delta N$  since this equality holds for the generators  $(x | i)$  of  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ . We shall use this and the fact that  $(\varphi \otimes \varphi)\Delta = \Delta\varphi$  in the computation that follows. In the Sweedler notation, we have

$$\sum_w Nw_{(1)} \otimes Nw_{(2)} = \sum_{Nw} (Nw)_{(1)} \otimes (Nw)_{(2)}$$

and

$$\sum_w \varphi w_{(1)} \otimes \varphi w_{(2)} = \sum_{\varphi(w)} (\varphi(w))_{(1)} \otimes (\varphi(w))_{(2)}.$$

We prove by induction on  $\text{Length } w$  that  $({}^t Nw, w') = (w, Nw')$ . The case  $\text{Length } w = 1$  is an easy calculation. Now in general,

$$\begin{aligned} ({}^t Nw, w'w'') &= \langle \varphi({}^t Nw), w'w'' \rangle \\ &= \sum_w \text{sign}(|w'| |w_{(2)}|) ({}^t Nw_{(1)}, w') ({}^t Nw_{(2)}, w'') \\ &= \sum_w \text{sign}(|w'| |w_{(2)}|) (w_{(1)}, Nw') (w_{(2)}, Nw'') \\ &= (w, N(w'w'')). \end{aligned}$$

4) Let  $F$  be an invariant polynomial in  $K[W]$ . We may choose a finite-dimensional subspace  $V$  in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  such that (i)  $V$  is spanned by basis words, (ii)  $V$  is stable under  $\text{GL}_n(K)$ , (iii) the image of  $V$  under  $U$  contains  $F$ . Let us denote this image by  $U(V)$  and the kernel of  $U$  on  $V$  by  $\ker(U)$ .

The bilinear form  $(, )$  is nondegenerate on  $\ker U$ . Indeed,  $\ker U$  has a basis consisting of expressions having two possible forms, namely:

- (i) words  $w \in V$  such that  $U(w) = 0$ ,
- (ii) differences  $w_1 - w_2$  where  $w_1, w_2$  are words in  $V$  such that  $U(w_1) = U(w_2) \neq 0$ .

Since  $(, )$  is nondegenerate on  $V$  and  $\ker U$ , we see that  $V = (\ker U) \otimes (\ker U)^\perp$ . It follows from 3) that  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  sends  $(\ker U)^\perp$  to itself. Hence, the  $\text{GL}_n(K)$ -modules  $U(V)$  and  $(\ker U)^\perp$  are isomorphic and  $F$  is the image under  $U$  of an invariant polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$ .

What happens to the proof above if  $\text{char } K = p > 0$ ? First, in order that  $U$  send  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  onto  $K[W]$  we need to require that the multinomial coefficients  $\binom{h}{j_1 \cdots j_n}$  be nonzero in  $K$  if  $S^h(V)$  is a component of  $W$ . With this

assumption, the entire argument goes through except the statement that  $(, )$  is nondegenerate on  $\ker U$ . In fact, simple examples show that  $(, )$  may be degenerate on  $\ker U$ . (See Example 2, §4, Chapter 5.)

Next, let  $R$  denote the subalgebra of  $K[W]$  generated by all invariant polynomials. Is  $R$  finitely generated over  $K$ ? That is, are there finitely many invariant polynomials  $f_1, \dots, f_m$  in  $R$  so that  $R = K[f_1, \dots, f_m]$ ? In 1939, H. Weyl showed that the answer is affirmative when  $K$  is the field of complex numbers. Weyl's result has been extended in recent times to arbitrary algebraically closed fields. This major accomplishment of Nagata, Mumford, and Haboush is part of modern geometric invariant theory. In this setting, Theorem 18 says that there are finitely many *bracket* monomials  $p_1, \dots, p_m$  so that  $R = K[f_1, \dots, f_m]$  where  $f_i = \langle U, p_i \rangle$ . Of course, it would be desirable to have a constructive proof of the existence of  $p_1, \dots, p_m$ .

**5. Covariants.** Throughout this section, we shall fix an action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on a vector space  $W$  having the form

$$W = \bigwedge^{k_1}(V) \times \cdots \times \bigwedge^{k_r}(V) \times S^{h_1}(V) \times \cdots \times S^{h_p}(V).$$

We shall assume that  $V$ , itself, is not one of the components of  $W$ . Let  $L$  be the alphabet constructed for  $W$  as in §3 and let  $U: \text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K \rightarrow K[W]$  be the corresponding umbral linear functional.

Let  $w \in \text{Div}(L)$  with  $\text{Length}(w) = k < n$ . Let  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-k}$  be distinct symbols in  $L_\infty^+$ . We extend  $U$  so that each  $a_i$  belongs to a distinct copy of  $V$ . Then the expression  $\langle U, [wa_1 \cdots a_{n-k}] \rangle$  gives an invariant polynomial on  $W \times V \times \cdots \times V$ , where there are  $(n-k)$  copies of  $V$ . Since this invariant polynomial is alternating and multilinear on  $V \times \cdots \times V$ , we may view it as an invariant polynomial on  $W \times \bigwedge^{n-k}(V)$  which is linear in the coordinates on  $\bigwedge^{n-k}(V)$ . In this setting, the invariant polynomial will be denoted by  $\text{cov}(w)$ .

We may extend this construction as follows. Let  $D = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_k)$  be a Young diagram on  $L$  with  $\text{length}(w_i) = \lambda_i \leq n$ . Let us choose distinct symbols  $a_{ij}$  in  $L_\infty^+$  where  $1 \leq i \leq k$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n - \lambda_i$ , and construct a new Young diagram  $D' = (w'_1, \dots, w'_k)$  where

$$\begin{aligned} w'_1 &= w_1 a_{11} \cdots a_{1, n-\lambda_1} \\ w'_2 &= w_2 a_{21} \cdots a_{2, n-\lambda_2} \\ &\vdots \\ w'_k &= w_k a_{k1} \cdots a_{k, n-\lambda_k}. \end{aligned}$$

We shall denote the expression  $[\text{stand}(w'_1)] \cdots [\text{stand}(w'_k)]$  in  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  by  $\text{cov}(D)$  and call it a *covariant* of  $W$ . Applying the umbral operator to  $\text{cov}(D)$ , we obtain an invariant polynomial on  $W \times \bigwedge^{n-\lambda_1}(V) \times \cdots \times \bigwedge^{n-\lambda_k}(V)$  which is linear in the coordinate functions on the various  $\bigwedge^{n-\lambda_i}(V)$ . This invariant polynomial may also be denoted (on occasion) by  $\text{cov}(D)$  if no confusion seems

possible. Let  $\alpha \in W$ . We shall write  $\text{cov}(D)(\alpha) = 0$  if for all  $\gamma_i \in \bigwedge^{n-\lambda_i}(V)$ , we have  $\text{cov}(D)(\alpha, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_k) = 0$ .

*Note.* In Chapter 5, we shall give many examples of covariants as just defined. For this note only, however, we shall adopt a slightly more general definition.

Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space with  $\dim V = n$ . Let  $W$  be a vector space having the form  $W = \bigwedge^{k_1}(V) \times \dots \times \bigwedge^{k_r}(V) \times S^{h_1}(V) \times \dots \times S^{h_p}(V)$ . A covariant of  $\text{GL}(V)$  acting on  $W$  is an invariant of  $\text{GL}(V)$  on  $W \times V \times \dots \times V$ . Let  $C$  be such a covariant with, say,  $m$  copies of  $V$ . Let  $\alpha \in W$ . We write  $C \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  if for all  $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_m \in V$  we have  $C(\alpha, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_m) = 0$ .

Let  $X$  be a  $\text{GL}(V)$ -stable subset of  $W$ . Suppose that there are polynomial functions  $f_1, \dots, f_r, f_{r+1}, \dots, f_{r+s}$  on  $W$  so that

$$X = \{\alpha \in W: f_i(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for each } i = 1, \dots, r \text{ and} \\ \text{there exists } j, 1 \leq j \leq s, \text{ so that } f_{r+j}(\alpha) \neq 0\}.$$

Then there exist covariants  $C_1, \dots, C_r, C_{r+1}, \dots, C_{r+s}$  on  $W \times V \times \dots \times V$ , where there are  $n$  copies of  $V$ , so that

$$X = \{\alpha \in W: C_i \sim 0 \text{ at } \alpha \text{ for each } i = 1, \dots, r \text{ and} \\ \text{there exists } j, 1 \leq j \leq s, \text{ so that } C_{r+j} \not\sim 0 \text{ at } \alpha\}.$$

**PROOF.** Let  $f$  be any polynomial function on  $W$ . We define a function  $f^*$  on  $W \times \text{GL}(V)$  by  $f^*(\alpha, N) = f(N^{-1}\alpha)$  for all  $\alpha \in W, N \in \text{GL}(V)$ . The function  $f^*$  is  $\text{GL}(V)$ -invariant, i.e., for any  $N' \in \text{GL}(V)$  we have  $f^*(N'\alpha, N'N) = f^*(\alpha, N)$ . The set  $W \times \text{GL}(V)$  is open in  $W \times V \times \dots \times V$ , where there are  $n$  copies of  $V$ . In fact,

$$W \times \text{GL}(V) = \{(\alpha, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n) \in W \times V \times \dots \times V: \det(\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n) \neq 0\}.$$

According to a standard algebraic fact, there is an integer  $m$  so that the function  $\det^m f^*$  is a polynomial function on  $W \times V \times \dots \times V$ . Let us call the invariant polynomial function  $\det^m f^*$  the covariant associated to  $f$ .

Let  $X$  be defined as above. Let  $C_i = \det^{m_i} f_i^*$  be the covariant associated to  $f_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, r, r+1, \dots, s$ . We shall show that these covariants define  $X$ .

First, let  $\alpha \in X$  and  $N \in \text{GL}(V)$ . For each  $i, 1 \leq i \leq r$  we have

$$C_i(\alpha, N) = (\det N)^{m_i} f_i(N^{-1}\alpha) = 0$$

since  $N^{-1}\alpha \in X$ . Since  $C_i$  vanishes on  $\{\alpha\} \times \text{GL}(V)$ , we have  $C_i \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ . Next, suppose that  $f_{r+j}(\alpha) \neq 0$  for some  $j, 1 \leq j \leq s$ . Let  $e$  denote the identity element in  $\text{GL}(V)$ . Then

$$C_{r+j}(\alpha, e) = f_{r+j}(\alpha) \neq 0.$$

Secondly, let  $\alpha \in W$ ; suppose that  $C_i \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  for each  $i = 1, \dots, r$  and that there exists  $j, 1 \leq j \leq s$ , so that  $C_{r+j} \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ . We shall show that  $\alpha \in X$ . Indeed, let  $N$  be any element in  $\text{GL}(V)$ . Then for each  $i, 1 \leq i \leq r$ , we have

$$0 = C_i(\alpha, N) = (\det N)^{m_i} f_i(N^{-1}\alpha)$$

so each  $f_i(N^{-1}\alpha) = 0$ . Also, since  $C_{r+j} \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , there is an  $N$  in  $\text{GL}(V)$  so that  $C_{r+j}(\alpha, N) \neq 0$ . Then

$$0 \neq C_{r+j}(\alpha, N) = (\det N)^{m_{r+j}} f_{r+j}(N^{-1}\alpha)$$

so that  $f_{r+j}(N^{-1}\alpha) \neq 0$ . By definition,  $N^{-1}\alpha \in X$ . But  $X$  is  $\text{GL}(V)$ -stable so  $\alpha \in X$ .

**6. The classical groups.** Throughout this section, we fix an action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on a vector space  $W$  having the form

$$(+)\quad W = \bigwedge^{k_1}(V) \times \dots \times \bigwedge^{k_r}(V) \times S^{h_1}(V) \times \dots \times S^{h_p}(V).$$

We shall assume that  $K$  is of characteristic 0. Also, if  $V$ , itself, appears among the components of  $W$ , then we shall assume it is written as  $\bigwedge^1(V)$ .

Let  $G$  be any subgroup of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$ . Then  $G$  acts on  $W$  in the natural way. Later on in this section, it will be important to distinguish between the absolute invariants of  $G$  and the relative invariants of  $G$ . An element  $f \in K[W]$  is called an *absolute invariant* of  $G$  if  $f(Nw) = f(w)$  for all  $N$  in  $G$ . An element  $f \in K[W]$  is called a *relative invariant* of  $G$  if there is a positive integer  $g$  so that  $f(Nw) = (\det N)^g f(w)$  for all  $N$  in  $G$ . We shall be interested here in the case where  $G$  is one of the classical groups.

*The symplectic group.* We assume here that  $n = 2m$ . An element  $\sum a_{ij} e_i \wedge e_j$  in  $\bigwedge^2(V)$  can be identified with the skew-symmetric matrix  $(a_{ij})$ . The group  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  acts on the vector space of  $n \times n$  skew-symmetric matrices via  $N \cdot J = NJ({}^t N)$ . The identification above establishes a  $\text{GL}_n(K)$ -isomorphism between  $\bigwedge^2(V)$  and the vector space of  $n \times n$  skew-symmetric matrices.

Let  $v_0 = \sum a_{ij} e_i \wedge e_j$  be defined as follows: if  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $j = 2m - i + 1$ , then  $a_{ij} = 1$ ; otherwise  $a_{ij} = 0$ . The *symplectic group*,  $\text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$ , consists of all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  such that  $Nv_0 = v_0$ . If  $J_0$  is the skew-symmetric matrix corresponding to  $v_0$ , then  $\text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$  consists of all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  so that  $NJ_0({}^t N) = J_0$ . It is known that  $\det N = 1$  for all  $N \in \text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$ .

**THEOREM 19.** Let  $\text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$  act on the vector space  $W$ . Let  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  be constructed for the action of  $\text{GL}_{2m}(K)$  on  $W \times \bigwedge^2(V)$ . Let  $U'$  be the corresponding umbral linear functional except if  $a$  is a symbol corresponding to the (added) component  $\bigwedge^2(V)$ , then

$$\langle U', (a^{(2)} | ij) \rangle = 1 \quad \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq m \text{ and } j = 2m - i + 1,$$

$$\langle U', (a^{(2)} | ij) \rangle = 0 \quad \text{otherwise.}$$

Then every (absolute) invariant of  $\text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$  acting on  $W$  can be written as  $\langle U', p \rangle$  where  $p$  is a bracket polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \times K$ .

**PROOF.** The umbral linear functional  $U$  constructed in §3 sends  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  onto  $K[W \times \bigwedge^2(V)]$ . The operator  $U'$  sends  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  onto  $K[W]$  since for each  $w \in W, p \in \text{Super}[L | P]$ , we have  $\langle U', p \rangle(w) = \langle U, p \rangle(w, v_0)$ .



Now let  $p$  be a bracket polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ . Let  $F = \langle U, p \rangle$  and define  $f \in K[W]$  by  $f(w) = F(w, v_0)$ . Let  $N \in \text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(Nw) &= F(Nw, v_0) = F(Nw, Nv_0) \\ &= F(w, v_0) \quad (\text{since } \det N = 1) = f(w). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $f$  is an absolute invariant of  $\text{Sp}_{2m}(K)$  and we have  $f(w) = F(w, v_0) = \langle U, p \rangle(w, v_0) = \langle U', p \rangle(w)$ . That any absolute invariant  $f \in K[W]$  can be constructed in this manner follows immediately from [Gr, (1.2)] via standard arguments in algebraic geometry.

*The orthogonal group.* An element  $\sum a_{ij}e_i e_j$  in  $S^2(V)$  can be identified with the symmetric matrix  $(a_{ij})$ . The group  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  acts on the vector space of  $n \times n$  symmetric matrices via  $N \cdot J = NJ^t N$ . The identification just given establishes a  $\text{GL}_n(K)$ -isomorphism between  $S^2(V)$  and the vector space of  $n \times n$  symmetric matrices.

Let  $v_0 = \sum e_i e_i$ . The *orthogonal group*,  $\text{O}_n(K)$ , consists of all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  such that  $Nv_0 = v_0$ . If we denote the  $n \times n$  identity matrix by  $I_n$ , then  $\text{O}_n(K)$  consists of all  $N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$  such that  $NI_n^t N = I_n$ . It is easy to see that  $\det N = \pm 1$  for all  $N \in \text{O}_n(K)$ .

**THEOREM 20.** *Let  $\text{O}_n(K)$  act on the vector space  $W$ . Let  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  be constructed for the action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on  $W \times S^2(V)$ . Let  $U'$  be the corresponding umbral linear functional except if  $a$  is a symbol corresponding to the (added) component  $S^2(V)$ , then*

$$\begin{aligned} \langle U', (a | 1)^{j_1} (a | 2)^{j_2} \cdots (a | n)^{j_n} \rangle \\ &= 1 \quad \text{if some } j_k = 2 \text{ and } j_1 + j_2 + \cdots + j_n = 2 \\ &= 0, \quad \text{otherwise.} \end{aligned}$$

*Then every absolute invariant of  $\text{O}_n(K)$  acting on  $W$  can be written as  $\langle U', p \rangle$  where  $p$  is a bracket polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  such that each monomial in  $p$  has an even number of brackets.*

This theorem is proved in a manner similar to the proof given for Theorem 19. We may also be interested in the relative invariants of  $\text{O}_n(K)$  acting on  $W$ . These, together with the absolute invariants, give the absolute invariants of  $\text{SO}_n(K)$  acting on  $W$ ; here,  $\text{SO}_n(K) = \{N \in \text{O}_n(K) : \det N = 1\}$ .

**THEOREM 21.** *Let  $\text{O}_n(K)$  act on the vector space  $W$ . Let  $\text{Super}[L | P]$  be constructed for the action of  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  on  $W \times S^2(V)$ . Let  $U'$  be as in Theorem 20. Then every relative invariant of  $\text{O}_n(K)$  acting on  $W$  can be written as  $\langle U', p \rangle$  where  $p$  is a bracket polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$  such that each monomial in  $p$  has an odd number of brackets.*

Once again, we may prove this result by rewriting the proof for Theorem 19. We should also observe that any relative invariant  $f$  of  $\text{O}_n(K)$  acting on  $W$  gives an absolute invariant  $t_{i_1 \dots i_n} f$  of  $\text{O}_n(K)$  acting on  $W \times \wedge^n(V)$ .

## 5. Examples

**1. Skew-symmetric tensors.** Let  $K$  be an infinite field such that  $\text{char } K \neq 2$ . Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over  $K$  with, say,  $\dim V = n$ . We shall fix a basis  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  of  $V$ .

Let  $\wedge(V)$  be the exterior algebra over  $V$ . In general (with the exception of the  $e_i$ 's), we shall denote the elements of  $\wedge(V)$  by Greek letters  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \dots$ . The product of two elements in  $\wedge(V)$  will be denoted by juxtaposition instead of a wedge, i.e., the product of elements  $\alpha, \beta$  in  $\wedge(V)$  will be denoted by  $\alpha\beta$  instead of  $\alpha \wedge \beta$ . (The wedge symbol will be used to denote another operation.)

We saw in Example (2), §2, Chapter 1, that  $\wedge(V)$  can be written as  $\text{Super}[A] \otimes K$  where  $A = A^- = \{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$ . So,  $\wedge(V)$  becomes a Hopf algebra with an algebra homomorphism  $\Delta: \wedge(V) \rightarrow \wedge(V) \otimes \wedge(V)$  such that for each  $\mu$  in  $V$ , we have  $\Delta(\mu) = \mu \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \mu$ .

Recall that a skew-symmetric tensor  $\alpha$  of step  $k$  is an element of  $\wedge^k(V)$ . For such an  $\alpha$  we sometimes write  $\text{step}(\alpha) = k = \text{length}(\alpha)$ . Relative to the given basis  $\{e_1, \dots, e_n\}$  of  $V$ , we have the expansion

$$\alpha = \sum_{i_1 < \cdots < i_k} (\alpha | i_1 \cdots i_k) e_{i_1} \cdots e_{i_k},$$

where the coefficients, denoted by  $(\alpha | i_1 \cdots i_k)$ , are in  $K$ . If  $\alpha$  is of step  $n$ , then  $\alpha = (\alpha | 1 \cdots n) e_1 \cdots e_n$ .

If  $\text{step}(\alpha) = k$  and  $\text{step}(\beta) = n - k$ , we shall often write the scalar  $(\alpha\beta | 1 \cdots n)$  simply as  $\alpha\beta$ .

An element  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$  is said to be *divisible* by a vector  $\beta \in V$  if there is an element  $\gamma \in \wedge^{k-1}(V)$  so that  $\alpha = \beta\gamma$ . The tensor  $\alpha$  is called *decomposable* if there are vectors  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k$  in  $V$  so that  $\alpha = \beta_1 \cdots \beta_k$ . We shall repeatedly make use of the following facts concerning division of tensors:

(D1) A vector  $\mu \in V$  divides an element  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$  if and only if  $\mu\alpha = 0$ .

(D2) Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ . Suppose there exist linearly independent vectors  $\mu_1, \dots, \mu_r$  which divide  $\alpha$ . Then there is an element  $\gamma \in \wedge^{k-r}(V)$  so that  $\alpha = \mu_1 \cdots \mu_r \gamma$ .

The proof of (D1) follows from taking any basis of  $V$  containing  $\mu$  and expressing  $\alpha$  in terms of the corresponding basis for  $\wedge^k(V)$ . The proof of (D2) is similar; choose any basis of  $V$  containing  $\mu_1, \dots, \mu_r$ .

**PROPOSITION 22.** Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ . Let  $V_\alpha = \{\mu \in V : \alpha\mu = 0\}$ .

- (i)  $\dim V_\alpha \leq k$ .
- (ii)  $\dim V_\alpha = k$  if and only if  $\alpha$  is decomposable.
- (iii) If  $\dim V_\alpha < k$ , then  $\dim V_\alpha \leq k - 2$ .
- (iv) Let  $W_\alpha = \{\alpha\mu : \mu \in V\}$ . Then  $\dim W_\alpha \geq n - k$ .

Furthermore,  $\dim W_\alpha = n - k$  if and only if the tensor  $\alpha$  is decomposable. If  $\dim W_\alpha > n - k$ , then  $\dim W_\alpha \geq n - k + 2$ .

**PROOF.** According to (D1), the vector space  $V_\alpha$  consists of all  $\mu$  which divide  $\alpha$ . Statements (i) and (ii) follow from (D2). To prove (iii), let us assume that  $\dim V_\alpha = k - 1$  and that  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_{k-1}\}$  is basis for  $V_\alpha$ . Extending this to a basis for  $V$  and writing  $\alpha$  in terms of this basis, we see that  $\alpha = \beta_1 \cdots \beta_{k-1} \beta$  for some  $\beta$  in  $V$ . But then  $\dim V_\alpha = k$ . Statement (iv) is a consequence of statements (i), (ii), (iii) applied to the mapping  $\psi: V \rightarrow \wedge^{k+1}(V), \mu \rightarrow \alpha\mu$ . For  $n = \dim(\text{image } \psi) + \dim V_\alpha$ .

**2. The meet.** Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^i(V)$  and  $\beta \in \wedge^j(V)$ . The *meet* of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , denoted by  $\alpha \wedge \beta$ , is that tensor defined as follows:

- (a) if  $i + j < n$ , then  $\alpha \wedge \beta = 0$ ;
- (b) if  $i + j \geq n$ , then  $\alpha \wedge \beta = \sum_{\alpha} (\alpha_{(1)} \beta | 1 \cdots n) \alpha_{(2)}$ .

Since this operation will play a major role in what follows, perhaps a word of explanation as to why it is well defined is in order. For given  $\beta$ , formula (b) is a composite mapping:  $\text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A] \otimes \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow K \otimes \text{Super}[A] \rightarrow \text{Super}[A]$ . Reading from left to right, the first map is  $\alpha \rightarrow \Delta\alpha$ , the second map is  $\gamma \otimes \delta \rightarrow (\gamma\beta | 1 \cdots n) \otimes \delta$ , and the third map is multiplication.

The following properties of the meet operation are important; their proofs follow quickly from the definition and are omitted.

- (M1) If  $\text{step } \alpha + \text{step } \beta \geq n$ , then  $\text{step } (\alpha \wedge \beta) = \text{step } \alpha + \text{step } \beta - n$ .
- (M2) The mapping  $\wedge(V) \times \wedge(V) \rightarrow \wedge(V), (\alpha, \beta) \rightarrow \alpha \wedge \beta$ , is bilinear.
- (M3) Let  $A = \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$  be a subset of  $\{1, \dots, n\}$  with  $i_1 < \dots < i_k$ ; let  $e_A = e_{i_1} \cdots e_{i_k}$ . (If  $A = \emptyset$ , put  $e_A = 1$ .)
  - (i) If  $A \cup B \neq \{1, \dots, n\}$ , then  $e_A \wedge e_B = 0$ .
  - (ii) If  $A \cup B = \{1, \dots, n\}$ , then  $e_A \wedge e_B = \text{sign}(k) e_{A \cap B}$  where  $k$  is the number of inversions in the sequence obtained by first writing in order  $A - B$  and then writing in order  $B - A$ .
- (M4) Let  $\text{step } \alpha = i$  and  $\text{step } \beta = j$ . Let  $p = i + j - n$ . Then  $\alpha \wedge \beta = \text{sign}(k) \beta \wedge \alpha$  where  $k = (i - p)(j - p)$ .
- (M5)  $\alpha \wedge (\beta \wedge \gamma) = (\alpha \wedge \beta) \wedge \gamma$ .
- (M6) Let  $N \in GL_n(K)$ . Then  $N\alpha \wedge N\beta = (\det N) \cdot N(\alpha \wedge \beta)$ .
- (M7)  $\alpha \wedge \beta = \sum_{\beta} (\alpha\beta_{(2)} | 1 \cdots n) \beta_{(1)}$ .

Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ . We define the *span* of  $\alpha$ , denoted by  $\text{span}(\alpha)$ , to be the subspace of  $V$  consisting of all vectors having the form  $\alpha \wedge \beta$  for  $\beta \in \wedge^{n-k+1}(V)$ . We define  $\text{rank } \alpha = \dim(\text{span } \alpha)$ . If  $\alpha$  is decomposable, say  $\alpha = \beta_1 \cdots \beta_k$ , then (it is easy to show that)  $\text{span } \alpha$  has a basis  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k\}$ .

The relationship between the meet and the ordinary product of two skew-symmetric tensors may be viewed using a mapping  $\phi$  defined as follows. Let  $A = \{i_1, \dots, i_p\}$  be a subset of  $\{1, \dots, n\}$  with  $i_1 < \dots < i_p$ . Let  $A'$  be the complement of  $A$  in  $\{1, \dots, n\}$ , say  $A' = \{j_1, \dots, j_r\}$  with  $j_1 < \dots < j_r$ . We define a linear transformation  $\phi: \wedge(V) \rightarrow \wedge(V)$  by  $\phi(e_A) = \text{sign}(k) e_{A'}$ , where  $k$  is the number of inversions in the sequence  $j_1, \dots, j_r, i_1, \dots, i_p$ . We note that  $\phi$  is a vector space isomorphism which sends  $\wedge^p(V)$  to  $\wedge^{n-p}(V)$ . If  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ , then  $\phi(\phi(\alpha)) = \text{sign}(k(n-k))\alpha$ . If  $\beta \in \wedge^j(V)$ , then  $\phi(\alpha \wedge \beta) = \phi(\alpha)\phi(\beta)$  and  $\phi(\alpha\beta) = \phi(\alpha) \wedge \phi(\beta)$ .

**PROPOSITION 23.** Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ . Then

- (i)  $\text{rank } \alpha \geq k$ ;
- (ii)  $\text{rank } \alpha = k$  if and only if  $\alpha$  is decomposable;
- (iii) if  $\text{rank } \alpha > k$ , then  $\text{rank } \alpha \geq k + 2$ .

**PROOF.** We examine the kernel of the mapping  $\psi: \wedge^{n-k+1}(V) \rightarrow \text{span } \alpha$  given by  $\psi(\beta) = \alpha \wedge \beta$ . An element  $\beta$  is in the kernel of  $\psi$  if and only if  $\phi(\alpha)\phi(\beta) = 0$ , i.e., if and only if for all  $\mu \in V$  we have  $0 = \phi(\alpha)\mu\phi(\beta)$ . Hence,

$$\dim(\ker \psi) = \binom{n}{n-k+1} - \dim\{\phi(\alpha)\mu : \mu \in V\}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank } \alpha &= \binom{n}{n-k+1} - \dim(\ker \psi) \\ &= \dim\{\phi(\alpha)\mu : \mu \in V\}. \end{aligned}$$

We apply Proposition 22, (iv), to see that  $\text{rank } \alpha = k$  or  $\text{rank } \alpha \geq k + 2$ .

If  $\alpha$  is decomposable, we noted above that  $\text{rank } \alpha = k$ . If, on the other hand,  $\text{rank } \alpha = k$ , then the equation above shows that  $\phi(\alpha)$  is decomposable. Therefore,

$$\dim\{\phi(\alpha) \wedge \delta : \delta \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)\} = n - k.$$

Indeed, if  $\phi(\alpha) = \gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_{n-k}$ , then a basis for this vector space is

$$\gamma_2 \cdots \gamma_{n-k}, \gamma_1 \gamma_3 \cdots \gamma_{n-k}, \gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_{n-k-1}.$$

But this vector space is isomorphic via  $\phi$  to  $\{\alpha\mu : \mu \in V\}$ . Thus,  $\alpha$  is decomposable by Proposition 22, (iv).

*Note.* In the course of this proof, we showed that  $\alpha$  is decomposable if and only if  $\phi(\alpha)$  is decomposable.

(M8) If  $\alpha \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable.

**PROOF.** We note that  $\phi(\alpha)$ , being a vector, is decomposable.

(M9) Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V), \beta \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$ . Then  $\alpha \wedge \beta \wedge \beta = 0$ .

PROOF. We apply  $\phi$  to see that  $\phi(\alpha)\phi(\beta)\phi(\beta) = \phi(\alpha) \cdot 0 = 0$ .

(M10) Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$  and  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$ . Let  $\beta = \alpha \wedge \gamma \in \wedge^{k-1}(V)$ . If  $\alpha$  is decomposable, then so is  $\beta$ .

PROOF. First,  $\text{span } \beta \subset \text{span } \alpha$  according to (M5). If  $\alpha$  is decomposable, then  $\text{rank } \alpha = k$ . Now,  $\text{rank } \beta = k - 1$  or  $\text{rank } \beta \geq k + 1$  according to Proposition 23. It follows that  $\text{rank } \beta = k - 1$  since  $\text{rank } \beta \leq \text{rank } \alpha$ .

**3. Covariants.** Let  $W$  be a vector space having the form

$$\wedge^{k_1}(V) \times \cdots \times \wedge^{k_r}(V).$$

We shall assume that if  $V$ , itself, appears as a component of  $W$ , then it is written as  $\wedge^1(V)$ . Let  $L$  be the alphabet constructed for  $W$  as in Chapter 4, §3. Let  $D = (w_1, \dots, w_k)$  be a Young diagram on  $L$  with  $\text{length}(w_i) = \lambda_i \leq n$ . In Chapter 4, §5, we used  $D$  to define an invariant polynomial on

$$W \times \wedge^{n-\lambda_1}(V) \times \cdots \times \wedge^{n-\lambda_k}(V)$$

called  $\text{cov}(D)$ .

For  $\alpha \in W$ , we have defined  $\text{cov}(D)(\alpha) = 0$  to mean that for all  $\gamma_i \in \wedge^{n-\lambda_i}(V)$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, k$ , we have  $\text{cov}(D)(\alpha, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_k) = 0$ . We shall write  $D \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  instead of  $\text{cov}(D)(\alpha) = 0$ .

This may also be interpreted as follows. In the expansion of  $\text{cov}(D)$ , the coefficients of the various monomials in the  $\gamma_i$ 's are given by the expressions

$$(*) \quad \langle U, (\text{stand}(w_1) | i_1 \cdots i_{\lambda_1}) \rangle \cdots \langle U, (\text{stand}(w_k) | j_1 \cdots j_{\lambda_k}) \rangle (\alpha),$$

where  $\{i_1, \dots, i_{\lambda_1}\}, \dots, \{j_1, \dots, j_{\lambda_k}\}$  are any  $k$  subsets of  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . (This follows from Rule 6, §2, Chapter 2.) Hence  $D \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  means that each term (\*) is 0.

The relationship between the meet and certain covariants will be very important later. In stating the main result below, we (tacitly) take  $W$  to be  $\wedge^k(V) \times \wedge^j(V) \times \wedge^p(V)$  where  $k + j > n$  and  $p = 2n - k - j$ .

**THEOREM 24.** Let  $a, b, c$  be in  $L$  with  $a < b < c$ . Suppose that  $a$  belongs to  $\wedge^k(V)$ ,  $b$  belongs to  $\wedge^j(V)$ , and  $c$  belongs to  $\wedge^p(V)$  where  $p = 2n - k - j$ . Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V), \beta \in \wedge^j(V), \gamma \in \wedge^p(V)$ . Let  $\varepsilon = \text{sign}[(k + j - n)j]$ .

(i) Let  $r = k + j - n$  and let  $\{i_1, \dots, i_r\}$  be any subset of  $\{1, \dots, n\}$  with  $i_1 < \cdots < i_r$ . Then

$$\langle U, [a^{(n-j)}b^{(j)}](a^{(r)} | i_1 \cdots i_r) \rangle (\alpha, \beta) = \varepsilon(\alpha \wedge \beta | i_1 \cdots i_r);$$

(ii)  $\langle U, [a^{(n-j)}b^{(j)}][a^{(r)}c^{(p)}] \rangle (\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = \varepsilon(\alpha \wedge \beta)\gamma$ ;

(iii)  $(\alpha \wedge \beta)\gamma = \varepsilon'(\alpha \wedge \gamma)\beta$  where  $\varepsilon' = \text{sign}[(n - j)(n - p)]$ .

PROOF. Let us introduce some notation. First, let  $a$  be any symbol and let  $A = \{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$  be any subset of  $\{1, \dots, n\}$  with  $i_1 < \cdots < i_k$ . We shall denote

$(a^{(k)} | i_1 \cdots i_k)$  by  $(a^{(k)} | A)$ . Now, it is enough to prove (i) when  $\alpha = e_A$  and  $\beta = e_B$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle U, [a^{(n-j)}b^{(j)}](a^{(r)} | i_1 \cdots i_r) \rangle (\alpha, \beta) \\ &= \sum \pm \langle U, (a^{(n-j)} | h'_1 \cdots h'_{n-j})(b^{(j)} | h_1 \cdots h_j)(a^{(r)} | i_1 \cdots i_r) \rangle (\alpha, \beta). \end{aligned}$$

The only possible nonzero term in this sum would have  $B = \{h_1, \dots, h_j\}, A - B = \{h'_1, \dots, h'_{n-j}\}$ , and  $A \cap B = \{i_1, \dots, i_r\}$ . This term gives  $\varepsilon(e_A \wedge e_B | i_1 \cdots i_r)$ . Statement (ii) is proved similarly and (iii) follows by interchanging the two brackets in (ii).

The theorem above extends to more than two brackets. (Both the statement and proof are easily generalized.) For example, let  $a, b, c, d$  be symbols in  $L$  with  $a < b < c < d$ . Let  $a$  belong to  $\wedge^k(V)$ ,  $b$  belong to  $\wedge^p(V)$ ,  $c$  belong to  $\wedge^r(V)$ , and  $d$  belong to  $\wedge^s(V)$  where  $s = 3n - kp - r$ . Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V), \beta \in \wedge^p(V), \gamma \in \wedge^r(V), \delta \in \wedge^s(V)$ . Then

$$\langle U, [a^{(n-p)}b^{(p)}][a^{(n-r)}c^{(r)}][a^{(n-s)}d^{(s)}] \rangle$$

at  $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)$  is  $\pm(\alpha \wedge \beta \wedge \gamma)\delta$  where the sign depends only on  $k, p, r$ , and  $s$ .

#### 4. Examples of invariants.

**EXAMPLE 1.** Suppose  $\text{char } K = 0$ . Let  $F$  be an invariant polynomial on  $\wedge^k(V)$ , homogeneous of degree  $d$ , such that  $F(N\alpha) = (\det N)^d F(\alpha)$  for all  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V), N \in \text{GL}_n(K)$ . Then  $rn = dk$ . (Recall that  $n = \dim V$ .)

PROOF. Let  $p$  be a bracket monomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ , say  $p = [w_1] \cdots [w_r]$ . There are  $rn$  symbols appearing in the words  $w_1, \dots, w_r$  and each symbol appears  $k$  times if  $\langle U, p \rangle \neq 0$ . The degree of  $\langle U, p \rangle$  is  $rn/k$  and the example is proved by applying Theorem 18.

**EXAMPLE 2.** Let  $\dim V = n = 2r$ ,  $\text{char } K = 0$ . If  $F$  is any homogeneous invariant polynomial in  $\wedge^2(V)$ , then there is a positive integer  $g$  so that  $F = c\text{Pf}^g$  where  $c \in K$  and  $\text{Pf}$  is the Pfaffian.

PROOF. We begin by recalling the definition of the Pfaffian,

$$r!\text{Pf} = \sum \text{sgn } \sigma (\alpha | \sigma 1 \sigma 2)(\alpha | \sigma 3 \sigma 4) \cdots (\alpha | \sigma 2r - 1 \sigma 2r),$$

where the sum is over all permutations  $\sigma$  of  $\{1, \dots, 2r\}$  such that  $\sigma 1 < \sigma 2, \sigma 3 < \sigma 4, \dots, \sigma(2r - 1) < \sigma(2r)$ . We observe that each monomial in the sum appears  $r!$  times, each with the same sign, so that all the coefficients of  $\text{Pf}$  are  $\pm 1$ .

Let  $a_1, \dots, a_r$  be symbols belonging to  $\wedge^2(V)$  such that  $a_1 < \cdots < a_r$ . Applying formula (b), Chapter 2, §2, we see that  $\langle U, [a_1^{(2)} \cdots a_r^{(2)}] \rangle = r!\text{Pf}$  and (by Theorem 16) that  $N\text{Pf} = (\det N)^{-1}\text{Pf}$ .

It is well known that  $\text{GL}_n(K)$  has an open orbit in  $\wedge^2(V)$ , say  $\text{GL}_n(K)\alpha_0$ , where we may assume that  $\text{Pf}(\alpha_0) = 1$ . Let  $F$  be any invariant polynomial on  $\wedge^2(V)$  with, say,  $F(N\alpha) = (\det N)^g F(\alpha)$ . Then  $F = F(\alpha_0)\text{Pf}^g$ . Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} F(N\alpha_0) &= (\det N)^g F(\alpha_0) = (\det N)^g \text{Pf}(\alpha_0)^g F(\alpha_0) \\ &= F(\alpha_0)(\text{Pf}(N\alpha_0))^g. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $F(\alpha) = F(\alpha_0)\text{Pf}(\alpha)^g$  for all  $\alpha \in \text{GL}_n(K) \cdot \alpha_0$ ; since the orbit of  $\alpha_0$  is open,  $F(\alpha) = F(\alpha_0)\text{Pf}(\alpha)^g$  everywhere.

*Note 1.* Suppose  $\text{char } K = p < r$ . It still can be shown that  $\text{Pf}$  is invariant. Since its degree is  $r$ , it would only be the image of  $[a_1^{(2)} \cdots a_r^{(2)}]$  in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ . But  $\langle U, [a_1^{(2)} \cdots a_r^{(2)}] \rangle = r!\text{Pf} = 0$ . We conclude that Theorem 18 cannot be true for  $\text{char } K = p > 0$ .

*Note 2.* Suppose  $\text{char } K \neq 2$  and  $\dim V = n = 2r + 1$ . It can be shown that  $\text{SL}_n(k)$  has an open orbit in  $\Lambda^2(V)$ , say  $\text{SL}(K) \cdot \alpha_0$ . Therefore, any invariant polynomial  $F$  is constant since  $F(N\alpha_0) = (\det N)^g F(\alpha_0) = 1^g F(\alpha_0) = F(\alpha_0)$ .

It is possible to give a combinatoric proof for Example 2 which avoids the use of orbits. We turn to this proof now, beginning with a lemma interesting in its own right.

**EXCHANGE LEMMA.** *Let  $u, v, w$  be words in  $\text{Super}[L]$ . Then*

$$\sum_u [u_{(1)}v][u_{(2)}w] = \text{sign}(k) \sum_v [v_{(1)}u][v_{(2)}w],$$

where  $k = n - \text{Length}(w)$ .

**PROOF.** This lemma follows at once from Proposition 10 by taking  $x = y = 1 \cdots n$ ,  $a = v$ ,  $b = u$ , and  $c = w$ .

**PROOF OF EXAMPLE 2.** Let  $F$  be a homogeneous, invariant polynomial on  $\Lambda^2(V)$ . Then, by Theorem 18,  $F$  can be written as  $\langle U, p \rangle$  where  $p$  is a bracket polynomial in  $\text{Super}[L | P] \otimes K$ . A typical bracket appearing in  $p$  has the form  $[a_1^{(2)} \cdots a_j^{(2)} a_{j+1} \cdots a_{j+k}]$  where the  $a_i$ 's are distinct symbols belonging to  $\Lambda^2(V)$  and  $2j + k = n$ . If  $2j = n$  in every such bracket, then we are finished. Otherwise, there are brackets with  $2j < n$ ; we shall say that such a bracket "splits" the symbols  $a_{j+1}, \dots, a_{j+k}$ .

Let  $a_1, \dots, a_m$ ,  $a_1 < \cdots < a_m$ , be all the symbols appearing in  $p$ . If  $a_r$  is split by some bracket in  $p$  but  $a_1, \dots, a_{r-1}$  are not, then we shall say that  $p$  has property  $P(r-1)$ . Let  $r$  be the largest integer so that  $F$  is the image of a bracket polynomial, say  $p$ , in  $a_1, \dots, a_m$  satisfying  $P(r)$ . Suppose that  $r < m + 1$ .

Let  $[w_1] \cdots [w_k]$  be a bracket monomial in  $p$  such that  $w_1$  splits  $a_r$ . We may assume that  $w_2$  also splits  $a_r$  and that

$$[w_1] = [b_1^{(2)} \cdots b_s^{(2)} a_r v], \quad [w_2] = [d_1^{(2)} \cdots d_t^{(2)} a_r v']$$

where  $b_1, \dots, b_s$  (resp.  $d_1, \dots, d_t$ ) are all the symbols in  $w_1$  (resp.  $w_2$ )  $< a_r$ . We apply the Exchange Lemma to  $[w_1][w_2]$  taking  $u = b_1^{(2)} \cdots b_s^{(2)} a_r^{(2)}$ ,  $v = v$ , and  $w = d_1^{(2)} \cdots d_t^{(2)} v'$ . Then

$$\sum_u [u_{(1)}v][u_{(2)}w][w_3] \cdots [w_k] = \pm \sum_v [v_{(1)}u][v_{(2)}w][w_3] \cdots [w_k].$$

Each term on the left-hand side of this equation has image  $\langle U, [w_1] \cdots [w_k] \rangle$ . Each term on the right-hand side satisfies property  $P(r+1)$ . Hence,  $r = m + 1$  and the example is proved.

**5. Examples of covariants.** We shall assume that  $K$  is an infinite field and  $\text{char } K \neq 2$ .

**EXAMPLE 1.** Let  $p \leq n$  and let  $a_1, \dots, a_p$  be  $p$  distinct symbols belonging to  $\Lambda^k(V)$ . Let  $C_p$  be the covariant defined by the diagram

$$C_p: \begin{array}{c} a_1 a_2 \cdots a_p \\ a_1^{(k-1)} \\ \vdots \\ a_p^{(k-1)} \end{array}$$

Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$ . Then  $\alpha$  has rank  $r$  if and only if  $C_r \neq 0$  at  $\alpha$  but  $C_{r+1} \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ .

**PROOF.** Let us choose  $p$  distinct symbols  $b_1, \dots, b_p$  belonging to  $p$  distinct copies of  $\Lambda^{n-k+1}(V)$ . For simplicity, let us suppose that  $a_1 < b_1 < a_2 < b_2 < \cdots < a_p < b_p$ . Let  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_p$  be  $p$  elements in the copies of  $\Lambda^{n-k+1}(V)$ . We evaluate

$$\langle U, [a_1^{(k-1)} b_1^{(n-k+1)}] \cdots [a_p^{(k-1)} b_p^{(n-k+1)}] (a_1 \cdots a_p | i_1 \cdots i_p) \rangle$$

at  $(\alpha, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_p)$ . By Example 5, Chapter 2, §3,

$$(a_1 \cdots a_p | i_1 \cdots i_p) = \sum_{\sigma} \text{sgn } \sigma (a_1 | i_{\sigma_1}) \cdots (a_p | i_{\sigma_p})$$

where  $\sigma$  ranges over all permutations of  $\{1, \dots, p\}$ . So, the expression above is

$$\pm \sum_{\sigma} \text{sgn } \sigma \langle U, [a_1^{(k-1)} b_1^{(n-k+1)}] (a_1 | i_{\sigma_1}) \rangle \cdots \langle U, [a_p^{(k-1)} b_p^{(n-k+1)}] (a_p | i_{\sigma_p}) \rangle$$

at  $(\alpha, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_p)$ . By Theorem 24(i), this is

$$\pm \sum_{\sigma} \text{sgn } \sigma (\alpha \wedge \beta_1)_{i_{\sigma_1}} \cdots (\alpha \wedge \beta_p)_{i_{\sigma_p}}.$$

**EXAMPLE 2.** Let  $a$  belong to  $\Lambda^k(V)$ ,  $b$  belong to  $\Lambda^r(V)$ , and  $c$  belong to  $\Lambda^{k+r}(V)$ . Suppose that  $a < b$ . Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$ ,  $\beta \in \Lambda^r(V)$ . Then

$$\langle U, (c^{(k+r)} | i_1 \cdots i_{k+r}) \rangle (\alpha\beta) = \langle U, (a^{(k)} b^{(r)} | i_1 \cdots i_{k+r}) \rangle (\alpha, \beta).$$

**PROOF.** The top expression is (by definition)  $(\alpha\beta | i_1 \cdots i_{k+r})$ . We now apply Rule 6, Chapter 2, §2 to see that

$$(a^{(k)} b^{(r)} | i_1 \cdots i_{k+r}) = \sum \pm (a^{(k)} | j_1 \cdots j_k) (b^{(r)} | h_1 \cdots h_r),$$

where  $\{j_1, \dots, j_k\} \cup \{h_1, \dots, h_r\} = \{i_1, \dots, i_{k+r}\}$ . If we assume that  $j_1 < \cdots < j_k$  and  $h_1 < \cdots < h_r$ , then the sign is determined by the number of transpositions in the sequence  $j_1, \dots, j_k, h_1, \dots, h_r$ . If we apply  $U$  and evaluate at  $(\alpha, \beta)$ , the expression becomes

$$\sum \pm (\alpha | j_1 \cdots j_k) (\beta | h_1 \cdots h_r) = (\alpha\beta | i_1 \cdots i_{k+r}).$$

EXAMPLE 3. Let  $a$  belong to  $\Lambda^k(V)$ ,  $b$  belong to  $\Lambda^j(V)$ ,  $c$  belong to  $\Lambda^i(V)$ , and  $d$  belong to  $\Lambda^p(V)$  where  $i+j+k+p=2n$ . Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$ ,  $\beta \in \Lambda^j(V)$ ,  $\gamma \in \Lambda^i(V)$ , and  $\delta \in \Lambda^p(V)$ . Then

$$\langle U, [a^{(n-i-j)}b^{(j)}c^{(i)}][a^{(k+i+j-n)}d^{(p)}] \rangle$$

evaluated at  $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)$  is  $\pm(\alpha \wedge \beta \gamma)\delta = \pm(\alpha \wedge \delta)\beta\gamma$ .

PROOF. Let  $e$  belong to  $\Lambda^{i+j}(V)$ . We apply Theorem 24 and Example 2 to see that

$$\langle U, [a^{(n-i-j)}b^{(j)}c^{(i)}][a^{(k+i+j-n)}d^{(p)}] \rangle$$

evaluated at  $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta)$  is

$$\pm \langle U, [a^{(n-i-j)}e^{(i+j)}][a^{(k+i+j-n)}d^{(p)}] \rangle (\alpha, \beta \gamma, \delta) = \pm(\alpha \wedge \beta \gamma)\delta.$$

EXAMPLE 4. Let  $a$  belong to  $\Lambda^k(V)$ ,  $b$  belong to  $V$ . Let  $C$  be the covariant determined by (the word)  $a^{(k)}b$ . Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$ ,  $\mu \in V$ . Then  $\mu$  divides  $\alpha$  if and only if  $C \sim 0$  at  $(\alpha, \mu)$ .

PROOF. This follows immediately from (D1), §1, and Example 2.

EXAMPLE 5 (THE GRASSMANN CONDITION). Let  $a, b$  belong to  $\Lambda^k(V)$ . Let  $C$  be the covariant determined by the diagram

$$C: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b \\ b^{(k-1)} \end{array}$$

Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$ . Then  $\alpha$  is decomposable if and only if  $C \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ .

PROOF. We apply Example 3 to see that  $C \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  if and only if for any  $\gamma \in \Lambda^{n-k-1}(V)$ ,  $\delta \in \Lambda^{n-k+1}(V)$ , we have

$$0 = (\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma)\delta = (\alpha \wedge \delta)\alpha \gamma.$$

Now, suppose that  $\alpha$  is decomposable, say,  $\alpha = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_k$ . Then  $\alpha \wedge \delta \in \text{span } \alpha$  and, so, is a linear combination of  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$ . Hence,  $(\alpha \wedge \delta)\alpha = 0$ .

Conversely, if  $(\alpha \wedge \delta)\alpha \gamma = 0$  for all  $\gamma, \delta$ , then every vector  $\alpha \wedge \delta$  divides  $\alpha$ . Since  $\text{rank } \alpha \geq k$ , we see (using (D2), §1) that  $\text{rank } \alpha = k$  and  $\alpha$  is decomposable.

EXAMPLE 6. Let  $a, b$  belong to distinct copies of  $\Lambda^k(V)$ . Let  $C$  be the covariant defined by the diagram

$$C: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b \\ b^{(k-1)} \end{array}$$

Let  $\alpha, \beta \in \Lambda^k(V)$  with  $\alpha, \beta \neq 0$ . If  $C \sim 0$  at  $(\alpha, \beta)$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable and  $\beta = c\alpha$  for some  $c \in K$ .

PROOF. According to Example 3,  $C \sim 0$  at  $(\alpha, \beta)$  if and only if for all  $\gamma \in \Lambda^{n-k-1}(V)$ ,  $\delta \in \Lambda^{n-k+1}(V)$ , we have

$$0 = (\beta \wedge \alpha \gamma)\delta = (\beta \wedge \delta)\alpha \gamma.$$

If  $\beta \neq 0$ , then  $\alpha$  is divisible by each vector  $\beta \wedge \delta$  in  $\text{span } \beta$ . But  $\text{rank } \beta \geq k$  and, applying (D2) in §1, we see that  $\text{rank } \beta = k$ . This shows (by Proposition 23) that  $\beta$  and, then,  $\alpha$  are decomposable and  $\beta = c\alpha$ .

EXAMPLE 7. (i) Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$  where  $k \leq n-3$ . Then  $\alpha$  is decomposable if and only if  $\alpha\mu$  is decomposable for all  $\mu \in V$ .

(ii) Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$  where  $k \geq 3$ . Then  $\alpha$  is decomposable if and only if  $\alpha \wedge \delta$  is decomposable for all  $\delta \in \Lambda^{n-1}(V)$ .

PROOF. Statement (ii) follows from (i) by applying  $\phi$ . To prove (i), it is (obviously) enough to show that  $\alpha$  is decomposable if  $\alpha\mu$  is decomposable for all  $\mu \in V$ .

LEMMA. Let  $\alpha, \beta \in \Lambda^k(V)$  be decomposable tensors with  $\alpha = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_k$  and  $\beta = \beta_1 \cdots \beta_k$  where  $\alpha_i, \beta_j \in V$ . Then  $\alpha + \beta$  is decomposable if and only if  $\dim(\text{span } \alpha \cap \text{span } \beta) \geq k-1$ .

PROOF. Let  $W = \text{span } \alpha \cap \text{span } \beta$ . If  $\dim W = k-1$ , we choose a basis of  $W$ , say  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{k-1}\}$  and extend this to bases  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{k-1}, \gamma'\}$ ,  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{k-1}, \gamma''\}$  of  $\text{span } \alpha$  and  $\text{span } \beta$ , respectively, so that

$$\alpha = \gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_{k-1} \gamma' \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_{k-1} \gamma''.$$

Then,  $\alpha + \beta = \gamma_1 \cdots \gamma_{k-1}(\gamma' + \gamma'')$ .

On the other hand, suppose that  $\dim W = r < k-1$  but  $\alpha + \beta$  is decomposable. We may assume that

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \alpha_{r+1} \cdots \alpha_k, \quad \beta = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \beta_{r+1} \cdots \beta_k,$$

where  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r\}$  is a basis for  $W$ . Let  $\alpha + \beta = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \gamma_{r+1} \cdots \gamma_k$  for some  $\gamma_i \in V$ ; we put  $\gamma = \gamma_{r+1}$ . Then

$$0 = (\alpha + \beta)\gamma = \alpha\gamma + \beta\gamma = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \alpha_{r+1} \cdots \alpha_k \gamma + \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \beta_{r+1} \cdots \beta_k \gamma.$$

If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \alpha_{r+1}, \dots, \alpha_k, \beta_{r+1}, \dots, \beta_k, \gamma\}$  is linearly independent, we obtain a contradiction at once from this equation. So, we may assume that

$$\gamma = \sum_{i=1}^r c_i \alpha_i + \sum_{i=r+1}^k c'_i \alpha_i + \sum_{i=r+1}^k c''_i \beta_i$$

for some  $c_i, c'_i, c''_i$  in  $K$ . Then each of the terms appearing in  $\alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \alpha_{r+1} \cdots \alpha_k \gamma$  contains one  $\beta_j$  while each of the terms appearing in  $\alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_r \beta_{r+1} \cdots \beta_k \gamma$  contains at least two  $\beta_j$ 's (since  $r < k-1$ ). Hence, each  $c''_i = 0$ . It then follows that each  $c'_i = 0$  and, so, that  $\gamma \in W$ , which is a contradiction.

We now prove Example 7. In this argument, for convenience, we denote elements in  $V$  by  $a, b, \dots, u, v, \dots$ . First, let  $u \in V$  be chosen so that  $\alpha u \neq 0$ . Let  $v \in V$  satisfy  $\alpha uv = 0$ . We shall show that there is a scalar  $c \in K$  so that  $\alpha v = c\alpha u$ . If  $\alpha v = 0$  we may take  $c = 0$ . If  $v = cu$ , then  $\alpha v = c\alpha u$ . Otherwise, by assumption,  $\alpha u + \alpha v = \alpha(u+v)$  is decomposable. Applying the previous lemma, we see that there are elements  $b', b'', v_2, \dots, v_{k-1}$  in  $V$  so that

$$\alpha u = b'v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}uv \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha v = b''v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}uv.$$

If  $\{b', b'', v_2, \dots, v_{k-1}, u, v\}$  is linearly dependent, we have  $\alpha v = c\alpha u$ . Otherwise, we may extend this set to a basis of  $V$ , say  $\{b', b'', v_2, \dots, v_{k-1}, u, v, w_1, \dots, w_r\}$  with  $r - n - k - 2 > 0$ . Writing  $\alpha$  in terms of this basis, we have

$$\alpha = b''v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}u + uv\beta - b'v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}v$$

for some  $\beta \in \wedge^{k-2}(V)$ . Then

$$\alpha w_1 = b''v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}uw_1 + uv\beta w_1 - b'v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}vw_1.$$

Let  $\gamma = uw_2 \cdots w_r$ . We calculate  $\alpha w_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma$ . First,

$$b''v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}uw_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma = cuv_2 \cdots v_{k-1}w_1$$

with  $c \in K, c \neq 0$ . Second, each term appearing in  $uv\beta w_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma$  is divisible by  $uvw_1$ . Third,  $b'v_2 \cdots v_{k-1}vw_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma = 0$ . Hence,  $\alpha w_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma$  contains the term  $uv_2 \cdots v_{k-1}w_1$  and  $\alpha w_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma \neq 0$ . However, applying Example 5, we have  $\alpha w_1 \wedge \alpha w_1 \gamma = 0$ . This contradiction shows that  $\alpha v = c\alpha u$  with  $c \in K$ .

Now, we show that  $\alpha$  is decomposable. Let  $V_\alpha = \{w \in V : \alpha w = 0\}$ . We shall show that  $\dim V_\alpha = k$ . Let  $u$  be any vector in  $V$  so that  $\alpha u \neq 0$ . Let  $T: V \rightarrow \wedge^{k+2}(V)$  be defined by  $T(v) = (\alpha u)v$ . Since  $\alpha u$  is decomposable,  $\dim(\text{kernel } T) = k + 1$ . On the other hand, let  $v \in \text{kernel } T$ . If  $\alpha v \neq 0$ , then (by what was just proved),  $\alpha v = c\alpha u$  for some  $c \in K$  and  $\alpha(v - cu) = 0$ . It follows that  $\dim(\text{kernel } T/V_\alpha) = 1$  and  $\dim V_\alpha = k$ .

EXAMPLE 8. Let  $a, b$  be symbols belonging to  $\wedge^k(V)$  where  $k = 2, \dots, n-2$ . Let  $C_k$  be the covariant defined by the diagram

$$C_k: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ b^{(k-2)} \end{array}$$

Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ . Then  $\alpha$  is decomposable if and only if  $C_k \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ .

PROOF. We begin with a lemma which will also be used later.

LEMMA. Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V), \mu \in V, \delta \in \wedge^{n-k+1}(V)$ , and  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-k-3}(V)$ . Then  $(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta)(\alpha\mu\gamma) = (\alpha \wedge \mu\delta)(\alpha\mu\gamma)$ .

PROOF. Since  $\Delta$  is an algebra homomorphism, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(\alpha\mu) &= \Delta\alpha\Delta\mu = \left( \sum_{\alpha} \alpha_{(1)} \otimes \alpha_{(2)} \right) (\mu \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \mu) \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} (\pm\alpha_{(1)}\mu \otimes \alpha_{(2)} + \alpha_{(1)} \otimes \alpha_{(2)}\mu). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha\mu \wedge \delta &= \sum_{\alpha\mu} ((\alpha\mu)_1 \delta \mid 1 \cdots n) (\alpha\mu)_{(2)} \\ &= \sum_{\alpha} (\alpha_{(1)}\mu\delta \mid 1 \cdots n) \alpha_{(2)} + \sum_{\alpha} (\alpha_{(1)}\delta \mid 1 \cdots n) \alpha_{(2)}\mu \\ &= (\alpha \wedge \mu\delta) + (\alpha \wedge \delta)\mu. \end{aligned}$$

The lemma follows immediately since  $\mu^2 = 0$ .

To prove Example 8, we begin by noting that  $C_k \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  means that  $(\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma)\delta = 0$  for all  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-k-2}(V), \delta \in \wedge^{n-k+2}(V)$ . If  $\alpha$  is decomposable, say  $\alpha = \alpha_1 \cdots \alpha_k$  with  $\alpha_i \in V$ , then

$$\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma = \sum_{\alpha} (\alpha_{(1)}\alpha\gamma \mid 1 \cdots n) \alpha_{(2)},$$

which is 0 since  $\alpha_{(1)} = \alpha_i \alpha_j$  and, so,  $\alpha_{(1)}\alpha = 0$ .

We prove the converse by induction on  $k$  with  $k = n-2, n-3, \dots, 2$ . For  $k = n-2$ , we need to show that  $\alpha$  is decomposable if  $\alpha \wedge \alpha = 0$ . Applying  $\phi$ , we see that it is enough to show that  $\alpha \in \wedge^2(V)$  is decomposable if  $\alpha^2 = 0$ . According to Example 5, we need to show that

$$0 = \langle U, (a^{(2)}b \mid ijk)(b \mid h) \rangle (\alpha) = (*)$$

where  $i < j < k$ . But, a (short) calculation shows that the coefficient of  $e_i e_j e_k e_h$  in  $\alpha^2$  is  $2(*)$ . Since  $\text{char } K \neq 2$ ,  $(*) = 0$  and  $\alpha$  is decomposable.

In general, let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$  and suppose that  $C_k \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ . Let  $\mu \in V$ . Applying the lemma, we see that  $C_{k+1} \sim 0$  at  $\alpha\mu$  since for  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-k-3}(V), \delta \in \wedge^{n-k+1}(V)$ , we have  $(\alpha\mu \wedge \alpha\mu\gamma)\delta = (\alpha\mu \wedge \delta)(\alpha\mu\gamma) = (\alpha \wedge \mu\delta)(\alpha\mu\gamma) = 0$ . By induction,  $\alpha\mu$  is decomposable. We now apply Example 7.

EXAMPLE 9. Let  $a, b, c$  belong to  $\wedge^3(V)$  and let  $\alpha \in \wedge^3(V)$ . Let  $C$  be the covariant defined by the diagram

$$C: \begin{array}{c} a^{(2)}b^{(3)} \\ ac^{(3)} \end{array}$$

Then  $\alpha$  is divisible by a vector if and only if  $C \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ .

PROOF. According to Example 3,  $C \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  if and only if  $(\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma)(\alpha\delta) = 0$  for all  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-5}(V), \delta \in \wedge^{n-4}(V)$ . Now, suppose that  $\alpha = \mu\beta$  where  $\mu \in V, \beta \in \wedge^2(V)$ . Then

$$\Delta\alpha = \Delta\mu\Delta\beta = (\mu \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \mu) (\beta \otimes 1 + 1 \otimes \beta + \sum \beta_{(1)} \otimes \beta_{(2)})$$

where  $\beta_{(1)}, \beta_{(2)}$  are all nonzero vectors. By definition,

$$\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma = \sum_{\alpha} (\alpha_{(1)}\alpha\gamma \mid 1 \cdots n) \alpha_{(2)}.$$

But each  $\alpha_{(1)}$  of step 2 is either  $\beta$  or of the form  $\mu\beta_{(1)}$ . In either case,  $\alpha_{(1)}\alpha = 0$ .

If  $\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma = 0$  for all  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-5}(V)$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable by Example 8. Otherwise, suppose that there is a  $\gamma^*$  with  $\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma^* \neq 0$ . By assumption,  $(\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma^*)\alpha = 0$  so the vector  $\alpha \wedge \alpha\gamma^*$  divides  $\alpha$ .

EXAMPLE 10. Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^3(V)$ . Suppose that  $\alpha$  is not decomposable but is divisible by a vector  $\mu \in V$ . Let  $a, b$  belong to  $\wedge^3(V)$ , and  $u$  belong to  $\wedge^{n-5}(V)$ .

There is a  $\gamma^* \in \Lambda^{n-5}(V)$  so that the vector with  $i$ th coordinate

$$\langle U, [a^{(3)}b^{(2)}u^{(n-5)}](b | i) \rangle (\alpha, \gamma^*)$$

is a nonzero scalar multiple of  $\mu$ .

PROOF. This follows at once from the proof of Example 9. Indeed,  $C \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  since  $\mu$  divides  $\alpha$ . Since  $\alpha$  is not decomposable, it is divisible by a vector of the form  $\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma^*$ .

EXAMPLE 11. Suppose  $\dim V = 5$ . If  $\alpha \in \Lambda^3(V)$ , then  $\alpha$  is divisible by a vector.

PROOF. A direct computation shows that  $(\alpha \wedge \alpha)\alpha = 0$ . We now apply Example 9.

EXAMPLE 12. Let  $a, b, c, d$  belong to  $\Lambda^4(V)$ . Let  $C_1, C_2, C_3$  be the covariants defined by the following diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C_1: & \begin{array}{c} a^{(4)}b^{(2)} \\ b^{(2)} \end{array} & C_2: \begin{array}{c} a^{(4)}b^{(2)} \\ bc^{(4)} \\ b \end{array} & C_3: \begin{array}{c} a^{(4)}b^{(2)} \\ bc^{(4)} \\ bd^{(4)} \end{array} \end{array}$$

Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^4(V)$ .

(i) If  $C_1 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable.

(ii) If  $C_1 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  but  $C_2 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then  $\alpha$  is divisible by exactly two linearly independent vectors.

(iii) If  $C_1 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  and  $C_2 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , but  $C_3 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  then  $\alpha$  is divisible by exactly one nonzero vector.

PROOF. According to Example 8,  $C_1 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  if and only if  $\alpha$  is decomposable. If  $C_1 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then there is a  $\gamma^* \in \Lambda^{n-6}(V)$  so that  $\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma^* \neq 0$ . Now,  $\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma^* \in \Lambda^2(V)$  and has rank  $\geq 2$ . If  $C_2 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then  $((\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma^*) \wedge \delta')\alpha\delta = 0$  for all  $\delta \in \Lambda^{n-5}(V), \delta' \in \Lambda^{n-1}(V)$ . Thus,  $\alpha$  is divisible by each vector in the span of  $\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma^*$ . Since  $\alpha$  is not decomposable, it is not divisible by three linearly independent vectors. Hence,  $\text{rank}(\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma^*) = 2$  and (ii) is proved.

We note that  $C_2 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  means that  $\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma_1 \wedge \alpha \gamma_2 = 0$  for all  $\gamma_1 \in \Lambda^{n-6}(V), \gamma_2 \in \Lambda^{n-5}(V)$ . Now, suppose that  $\alpha$  is divisible by two linearly independent vectors, say  $\alpha = \mu_1 \mu_2 \beta, \mu_i \in V, \beta \in \Lambda^2(V)$ . Then for  $\gamma_1 \in \Lambda^{n-6}(V)$  we have

$$\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma_1 = \sum (\alpha_{(1)} \alpha \gamma_1 | 1 \cdots n) \alpha_{(2)} = 0$$

since either  $\mu_1$  or  $\mu_2$  or  $\beta$  appears in  $\alpha_{(1)}$ . So,  $C_2 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ .

Finally, suppose that  $C_1 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha, C_2 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , but  $C_3 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ . Then, there are elements  $\gamma_1^* \in \Lambda^{n-6}(V), \gamma_2^* \in \Lambda^{n-5}(V)$  so that the vector  $\mu = \alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma_1^* \wedge \alpha \gamma_2^* \neq 0$ . Since  $C_3 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , we have  $0 = (\alpha \wedge \alpha \gamma_1^* \wedge \alpha \gamma_2^*)\alpha\delta$  for all  $\delta \in \Lambda^{n-5}(V)$ , so  $\mu$  divides  $\alpha$ .

EXAMPLE 13. Let  $a, b, c, d, e, \dots$  belong to  $\Lambda^k(V)$ . Let  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_{k-1}$  be the covariants defined by the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{l} C_1: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ b^{(k-2)} \end{array} \\ \\ C_2: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ bc^{(k)} \\ b^{(k-3)} \end{array} \\ \\ C_3: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ bc^{(k)} \\ bd^{(k)} \\ b^{(k-4)} \end{array} \\ \\ \vdots \\ \\ C_{k-2}: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ bc^{(k)} \\ bd^{(k)} \\ \vdots \\ b \end{array} \\ \\ \vdots \\ \\ C_{k-1}: \begin{array}{c} a^{(k)}b^{(2)} \\ bc^{(k)} \\ bd^{(k)} \\ \vdots \\ be^{(k)} \end{array} \end{array}$$

Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^k(V)$ .

(i) If  $C_1 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable.

(ii) If  $C_1 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$  but  $C_2 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then  $\alpha$  is divisible by exactly  $k-2$  linearly independent vectors.

(iii) If  $C_1 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha, C_2 \not\sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , but  $C_3 \sim 0$  at  $\alpha$ , then  $\alpha$  is divisible by exactly  $k-3$  linearly independent vectors.

PROOF. This is similar to that given when  $k=4$  so we omit it.

EXAMPLE 14. Let  $\alpha \in \Lambda^2(V)$ . Then  $\text{rank } \alpha$  is even, say,  $\text{rank } \alpha = 2r$ . Furthermore, there is a basis  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_{2r}\}$  of span  $\alpha$  so that  $\alpha = \beta_1 \beta_2 + \dots + \beta_{2r-1} \beta_{2r}$ .

We begin by proving the following result, which will also be useful later.

LEMMA. Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$ ,  $k \geq 2$ . There exist  $\mu \in V$  and  $\delta \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$  so that the following conditions hold:

- (i)  $\alpha\mu \wedge \delta = (-1)^k \alpha + (\alpha \wedge \delta)\mu$ ;
- (ii)  $W = \text{span}(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) + \text{span}(\alpha \wedge \delta) \subset \text{span } \alpha$ ;
- (iii)  $\mu \notin W$ ;
- (iv)  $\dim W = \text{rank } \alpha - 1$ ;
- (v) if  $\alpha$  is not decomposable and if  $k \geq 3$ , then  $\delta$  may be chosen so that  $\alpha \wedge \delta$  is not decomposable.

PROOF. Let  $\delta \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$  be chosen so that  $\alpha \wedge \delta \neq 0$ . If  $\alpha$  is not decomposable, we may assume (by Example 7) that  $\alpha \wedge \delta$  is not decomposable. Let  $\gamma^* \in \wedge^{n-k+1}(V)$  be chosen so that

$$(-1)^{k-1}(\alpha \wedge \delta)\gamma^* = (\alpha \wedge \gamma^*)\delta = 1.$$

Let  $\mu = \alpha \wedge \gamma^*$ . Statement (i) follows as in the proof of the Lemma, Example 8.

We have  $\text{span}(\alpha \wedge \delta) \subset \text{span } \alpha$  by (M5). To show that  $\text{span}(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) \subset \text{span } \alpha$ , let  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-k+1}(V)$ . Then, using the Lemma, Example 8, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) \wedge \gamma &= (-1)^k \alpha \wedge \gamma + ((\alpha \wedge \delta)\mu) \wedge \gamma \\ &= (-1)^k \alpha \wedge \gamma - (\alpha \wedge \delta \wedge \mu\gamma) + (\alpha \wedge \delta \wedge \gamma)\mu. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\alpha \wedge \delta \wedge \gamma$  is a scalar and  $\mu = \alpha \wedge \gamma^*$ , we may conclude that  $\text{span}(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) \subset \text{span } \alpha$ . This proves (ii). Statement (iv) will follow from the equation above for  $(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) \wedge \gamma$  once (iii) is proven.

By definition,  $\mu = \alpha \wedge \gamma^* \in \text{span } \alpha$  and  $\mu\delta = 1$ . However, for any  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-k+1}(V)$ , we have

$$(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta \wedge \gamma)\delta = \pm((\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) \wedge \delta)\gamma = \pm(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta \wedge \delta)\gamma = 0$$

according to (M9). Similarly, for any  $\gamma \in \wedge^{n-k+2}(V)$ , we have

$$(\alpha \wedge \delta \wedge \gamma)\delta = \pm(\alpha \wedge \delta \wedge \delta)\gamma = 0.$$

PROOF OF EXAMPLE 14. We proceed by induction on rank  $\alpha$ . If rank  $\alpha = 2$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable. Otherwise, let us choose  $\delta \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$  and  $\gamma^* \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$  as in the proof of the lemma above. As before, let  $\mu = \alpha \wedge \gamma^*$ . Then  $\beta = \alpha\mu \wedge \delta$  is in  $\wedge^2(V)$  but rank  $\beta < \text{rank } \alpha$  by (iv). By induction, rank  $\beta = 2r - 2$ .

If  $\mu_1$  and  $\mu_2$  are any elements in  $V$  and if  $\delta'$  is any element in  $\wedge^{n-1}(V)$ , then (by the definition of the meet) we have

$$\mu_1\mu_2 \wedge \delta' = (\mu_1\delta')\mu_2 - (\mu_2\delta')\mu_1.$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \beta \wedge \gamma^* &= \alpha \wedge \gamma^* + ((\alpha \wedge \delta)\mu) \wedge \gamma^* \\ &= \alpha \wedge \gamma^* + ((\alpha \wedge \delta)\gamma^*)\mu - (\mu\gamma^*)(\alpha \wedge \delta) \\ &= \mu - \mu - (\mu\gamma^*)(\alpha \wedge \delta). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\gamma^*$  is in  $\wedge^{n-1}(V)$ , it is decomposable and  $\mu\gamma^* = (\alpha \wedge \gamma^*)\gamma^* = 0$ . Hence,  $\beta \wedge \gamma^* = 0$ . Then, for any  $\delta' \in \wedge^{n-1}(V)$ , we have  $(\beta \wedge \delta')\gamma^* = -(\beta \wedge \gamma^*)\delta' = 0$ . Since  $(\alpha \wedge \delta)\gamma^* = -1$ , it follows that  $\alpha \wedge \delta$  is not in  $\text{span } \beta$ . Applying statements (ii), (iii), and (iv) in the lemma, we see that rank  $\alpha = 2r$ . We now apply the induction hypothesis to the equation  $\alpha = \beta + (\alpha \wedge \gamma^*)(\alpha \wedge \delta)$ .

Note. The proof above gives something more which will be used later. Namely, let  $\alpha \in \wedge^2(V)$  with rank  $\alpha = 2r$ . Let  $\beta_1 = \alpha \wedge \delta_1$  and  $\beta_2 = \alpha \wedge \delta_2$  be in  $\text{span } \alpha$ . If  $(\alpha \wedge \delta_1)\delta_2 \neq 0$ , then there is a scalar  $c \in K$  and vectors  $\beta_3, \dots, \beta_{2r}$  in  $\text{span } \alpha$  so that  $\alpha = c\beta_1\beta_2 + \dots + \beta_{2r-1}\beta_{2r}$ . (To see this, just take  $\delta_1 = \delta$  and  $\gamma^* = -c\delta_2$ .)

EXAMPLE 15. Let  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$  and  $W = \text{span } \alpha$ . Then  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(W)$ .

PROOF. We proceed by induction on step  $\alpha$  and, for fixed step, by induction on rank  $\alpha$ . If  $k = 1$ , the statement is trivial and if  $k = 2$ , the result follows from Example 14. So, let  $k \geq 3$ . If rank  $\alpha = k$ , then  $\alpha$  is decomposable with, say,  $\alpha = \beta_1 \cdots \beta_k$ . Since  $\text{span } \alpha$  has basis  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k\}$ , our example holds.

We may now assume  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(V)$  and rank  $\alpha > k$ . We apply the Lemma, Example 14, to see that we may write  $\alpha\mu \wedge \delta = (-1)^k \alpha + (\alpha \wedge \delta)\mu$ . By induction, the example holds for  $\alpha\mu \wedge \delta$  (since rank  $(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) < \text{rank } \alpha$ ) and  $\alpha \wedge \delta$  (since  $\alpha \wedge \delta \in \wedge^{k-1}(V)$ ). Now,  $\mu \in \text{span } \alpha$  and  $\text{span}(\alpha\mu \wedge \delta) + \text{span}(\alpha \wedge \delta) \subset \text{span } \alpha$ . Hence,  $\alpha \in \wedge^k(\text{span } \alpha)$ .

EXAMPLE 16. We shall determine canonical forms for elements of  $\wedge^3(V)$  when  $\dim V = 3, 4, 5$ , and 6. If  $\alpha \in \wedge^3(V)$  and  $\dim V = 3$  or 4, then rank  $\alpha = 3$  and  $\alpha$  is decomposable. If  $\dim V = 5$ , then  $\alpha$  is divisible by a vector (Example 11). Thus, we may assume that  $\dim V = 6$ .

It will simplify our notation if we abandon the Greek alphabet and, instead, denote elements in  $\wedge^k(V)$  by symbols  $a^{(k)}$ . If  $k = 1$ , we write simply  $b, c, d, \dots$ . We shall prove that the following four canonical forms suffice.

- I.  $a^{(3)} = bcd$ .
- II.  $a^{(3)} = bcd + bef$ .
- III.  $a^{(3)} = bcd + bfg + cef$ .
- IV.  $a^{(3)} = bcd + efg$ .

If rank  $a^{(3)} = 3$ , then  $a^{(3)}$  has form I. Hence, we may assume that rank  $a^{(3)} = 5$  or 6. If rank  $\alpha = 5$ , then  $\alpha$  has form I or II (by Example 15). So, we may assume rank  $\alpha = 6$ . According to the previous lemma, we may write

$$a^{(3)} = bv^{(2)} + c^{(3)},$$

where  $W = \text{span } c^{(3)} + \text{span } v^{(2)} \subset \text{span } a^{(3)}$ ,  $b \notin W$ ,  $\dim W = \text{rank } a^{(3)} - 1$ , and  $v^{(2)}$  is not decomposable. Since  $v^{(2)}$  is not decomposable, rank  $v^{(2)} = 4$  by Example 14.

LEMMA 1. Let  $v^{(2)} \in \wedge^2(V)$  have rank 4. Let  $v$  and  $w$  be any linearly independent vectors in  $\text{span } v^{(2)}$ . Then there are vectors  $b, c$ , so that either

- (i)  $v^{(2)} = c_1vw + bc$  for some  $c_1 \in K$  or
- (ii)  $v^{(2)} = vb + cw$ .



PROOF. We may assume that  $\dim V = 4$ . Let  $v = v^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)}$  and  $w = v^{(2)} \wedge d_2^{(3)}$  where  $d_1^{(3)}$  and  $d_2^{(3)}$  are linearly independent elements in  $\wedge^3(V)$ . If  $vd_2^{(3)} \neq 0$ , then we obtain (i) from the note following Example 14. So, let us assume that  $vd_2^{(3)} = 0$ . Let  $d_3^{(3)} \in \wedge^3(V)$  be chosen so that  $vd_3^{(3)} = 0$  and  $wd_3^{(3)} = 1$ . Then, again by the note following Example 14, the tensor  $w^{(2)} = v^{(2)} - w(v^{(2)} \wedge d_3^{(3)})$  has rank 2. To obtain case (ii), we need only prove that  $v$  is in  $\text{span } w^{(2)}$ . But

$$\begin{aligned} w^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)} &= v^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)} - (w(v^{(2)} \wedge d_3^{(3)})) \wedge d_1^{(3)} \\ &= v^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)} - (wd_1^{(3)})(v^{(2)} \wedge d_3^{(3)}) + ((v^{(2)} \wedge d_3^{(3)})d_1^{(3)})w \end{aligned}$$

which is  $v^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)} = v$  since

$$wd_1^{(3)} = (v^{(2)} \wedge d_2^{(3)})d_1^{(3)} = -(v^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)})d_2^{(3)} = 0$$

and

$$(v^{(2)} \wedge d_3^{(3)})d_1^{(3)} = -(v^{(2)} \wedge d_1^{(3)})d_3^{(3)} = -vd_3^{(3)} = 0.$$

Case 1.  $c^{(3)}$  is decomposable.

Since  $\text{rank } v^{(2)} = 4$  and  $\text{rank } c^{(3)} = 3$ , we see that  $\dim(\text{span } v^{(2)} \cap \text{span } c^{(3)}) = 2$ . Let  $v_1, v_2$  be a basis of this intersection. There is a vector  $d \in V$  so that  $c^{(3)} = dv_1v_2$ . Furthermore (by Lemma 1), we may find  $v_3, v_4 \in \text{span } v^{(2)}$  so that either  $v^{(2)} = v_1v_2 + v_3v_4$  or  $v^{(2)} = v_1v_3 + v_2v_4$ . In the first case,  $a^{(3)}$  has the form IV and in the second case, form III.

Case 2.  $c^{(3)}$  is not decomposable.

From the dimension identity

$$\begin{aligned} &\dim \text{span } c^{(3)} + \dim \text{span } v^{(2)} \\ &= \dim((\text{span } c^{(3)}) \wedge (\text{span } v^{(2)})) + \dim((\text{span } c^{(3)}) \vee (\text{span } v^{(2)})) \end{aligned}$$

(where meets and joins here are meant in the lattice sense, as meets and joins of subspaces of a vector space) we infer

$$5 + 4 = \dim((\text{span } c^{(3)}) \wedge (\text{span } v^{(2)})) + 5;$$

hence  $\dim((\text{span } c^{(3)}) \wedge (\text{span } v^{(2)})) = 4$ . This implies that  $\text{span } v^{(2)} \subseteq \text{span } c^{(3)}$ .

Since  $c^{(3)}$  is of rank 5, it is divisible by a vector, say,  $c^{(3)} = dw^{(2)}$ , where  $w^{(2)}$  is a bivector of rank 4, which can be written as the sum of two decomposable bivectors  $w^{(2)} = w_1^{(2)} + w_2^{(2)}$ . Again from the dimension identity

$$4 + 3 = \dim((\text{span } v^{(2)}) \vee (\text{span}(dw_i^{(2)}))) + \dim((\text{span } v^{(2)}) \wedge (\text{span}(dw_i^{(2)}))),$$

we infer that  $\dim(\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \vee \text{span}(dw_i^{(2)})) = 5$  either for  $i = 1$  or for  $i = 2$ ; for otherwise, if  $\dim(\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \vee (\text{span } dw_i^{(2)})) = 4$  for  $i = 1$  and  $i = 2$ , it would follow that  $\dim(\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \wedge \text{span}(dw_i^{(2)})) = 3$  for  $i = 1$  and  $i = 2$ . This would in turn entail that  $\text{span}(dw_i^{(2)}) \subseteq \text{span}(v^{(2)})$  for  $i = 1$  and  $i = 2$ , whence  $\text{span}(dw^{(2)}) \subseteq \text{span}(v^{(2)})$ , and  $\text{span}(c^{(3)}) \subseteq \text{span}(dw^{(2)}) \vee \text{span}(v^{(2)}) =$

$\text{span}(v^{(2)})$ . Thus,  $\text{rank } c^{(3)} \leq \text{rank } v^{(2)} = 4$ , contradicting the assumption that  $\text{rank } c^{(3)} = 5$ . We therefore may and will assume henceforth that

$$\dim(\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \vee \text{span}(dw_1^{(2)})) = 5,$$

and, as a consequence, that

$$\dim((\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \wedge \text{span}(dw_1^{(2)}))) = 2.$$

There are two subcases.

Case 2.1.  $\dim((\text{span } v^{(2)}) \wedge (\text{span } dw_2^{(2)})) = 3$ .

We then have that  $\text{span}(dw_2^{(2)}) \subseteq \text{span}(v^{(2)})$ , and hence  $d \in \text{span}(v^{(2)})$ . Choose a basis  $d, f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4$  of the subspace  $\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \vee \text{span}(dw_1^{(2)})$  such that:

- (a)  $d, f_1$  span  $\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \wedge \text{span}(dw_1^{(2)})$ ,
- (b)  $d, f_2, f_3$  span  $dw_2^{(2)}$ ,
- (c)  $d, f_1, f_4$  span  $dw_1^{(2)}$
- (d)  $d, f_1, f_2, f_3$  span  $\text{span } v^{(2)}$ .

There are now two possibilities: either

Case 2.1.1.  $v^{(2)} = k_1df_1 + k_2f_2f_3$ , for some scalars  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ , or else

Case 2.1.2.  $v^{(2)} = k_1df_2 + k_2f_1f_3$ .

In case 2.1.1 we find

$$a^{(3)} = (k_1b + f_4)df_1 + (k_2b + d)f_2f_3,$$

which gives canonical form IV, and in case 2.1.2 we find

$$a^{(3)} = (k_1b + f_3)df_2 + k_2bf_1f_3 + df_1f_4,$$

whence, setting  $f_5 = k_1b + k_2f_3$ ,

$$a^{(3)} = f_5df_2 + bf_1f_5 + d_1f_1f_4,$$

which gives canonical form III.

Case 2.2.  $\dim(\text{span}(v^{(2)}) \wedge \text{span}(dw_2^{(2)})) = 2$ .

Again we have two sub-subcases.

Case 2.2.1.  $d \notin \text{span}(v^{(2)})$ .

We can then choose  $f_1, f_2$  in  $\text{span}(v^{(2)})$  so that  $dw_1^{(2)} = df_1f_2$  and  $f_3, f_4$  in  $\text{span}(v^{(2)})$  so that  $dw_2^{(2)} = df_3f_4$ . The vectors  $f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4$  are linearly independent, hence they span  $\text{span}(v^{(2)})$ . It follows that  $\text{span}(v^{(2)}) = \text{span}(w^{(2)})$ . We can therefore find a basis  $g_1, g_2, g_3, g_4$  of  $\text{span}(v^{(2)})$  such that, for suitable scalars  $k_i$ :

$$v^{(2)} = k_1g_1g_2 + k_2g_3g_4,$$

$$w^{(2)} = k_3g_1g_2 + k_4g_3g_4,$$

so that

$$a^{(3)} = (k_1b + k_3d)g_1g_2 + (k_2b + k_4d)g_3g_4,$$

which is canonical form IV.

Case 2.2.2.  $d \in \text{span}(V^{(2)})$ .

Then, for suitable  $g_i$ ,  $v^{(2)} = dg_1 + g_2g_3$ , and  $a^{(3)} = bg_2g_3 + d(w^{(2)} + bg_1)$ , which is, after a change of lettering, case 1. The proof is therefore complete.

We can now proceed to express the preceding results in terms of the vanishing of covariants. Consider the covariants

$$\begin{aligned} C_1: & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)} \\ & \quad b \\ C_2: & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c \\ & \quad bc^{(2)} \\ C_3: & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c \\ & \quad bc^{(2)}d^{(3)} \end{aligned}$$

when all symbols are equivalent. We again assume that  $n = 6$ . Clearly the vanishing of  $C_i$  implies the vanishing of  $C_{i+1}$ . If  $C_3 \neq 0$  then the tensor  $a^{(3)}$  has the canonical form IV. One verifies that if  $a^{(3)}$  has the canonical form III then  $C_3 \sim 0$ . Conversely, suppose that  $C_3 \sim 0$ . From our previous classification, we infer that the tensor must have one of the canonical forms I, II, or III. Similarly,  $C_2 \sim 0$  if and only if the tensor has one of the canonical forms I or II, and  $C_1 \sim 0$  if and only if the tensor has the canonical form I; that is, if and only if it is decomposable.

Then we see that each of the canonical forms for a tensor of step 3 in dimension 6 can be characterized by the vanishing or nonvanishing of a covariant.

Consider now the following covariants:

$$\begin{aligned} & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c^{(2)} \\ C_4: & \quad b \\ & \quad c \\ & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c^{(2)} \\ C_5: & \quad bd^{(3)} \\ & \quad c \\ & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c^{(2)} \\ C_6: & \quad bd^{(3)}e^{(2)} \\ & \quad ce \\ & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c^{(2)} \\ C_7: & \quad bd^{(3)}e^{(2)}f \\ & \quad cef^{(2)} \\ & \quad a^{(3)}b^{(2)}c^{(2)} \\ C_8: & \quad bd^{(3)}e^{(2)}f \\ & \quad cef^{(2)}g^{(3)} \end{aligned}$$

We state without proof the classification of tensors of step 3 in dimension 7. To the previously found canonical forms we now add the following canonical forms:

$$\begin{aligned} V. & \quad aqp + brp + csp. \\ VI. & \quad qrs + aqp + brp + csp. \\ VII. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp. \\ VIII. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + brp. \\ IX. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + brp + csp. \end{aligned}$$

Here all symbols are of step 1 and all symbols are equivalent.

Again, one verifies directly that the most general tensor of step 3 in dimension 7 is of the form IX. If  $C_8 \sim 0$  but  $C_7 \neq 0$  then the canonical form is VIII; if  $C_7 \sim 0$  but  $C_6 \neq 0$  then the canonical form is VII, etc. The proof that these canonical forms are the only ones will not be given here.

For a tensor of type IX, the value of the covariant  $C_8$  is the single term

$$\begin{aligned} & \quad (aqp)(bc)(rs) \\ & \quad a(qrs)(bc)p \\ & \quad qa(br)(csp). \end{aligned}$$

For a vector of step 3 in dimension 8 we have the following canonical forms:

$$\begin{aligned} X. & \quad aqp + brp + csp + crt. \\ XI. & \quad qrs + aqp + brp + csp + crt. \\ XII. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + crt. \\ XIII. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + brp + crt. \\ XIV. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + brp + csp + crt. \\ XV. & \quad aqp + bst + crt. \\ XVI. & \quad aqp + brp + bst + crt. \\ XVII. & \quad qrs + aqp + brp + bst + crt. \\ XVIII. & \quad aqp + brp + csp + bst + crt. \\ XIX. & \quad qrs + aqp + brp + csp + bst + crt. \\ XX. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + bst + crt. \\ XXI. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + brp + bst + crt. \\ XXII. & \quad abc + qrs + aqp + brp + csp + bst + crt. \end{aligned}$$

The covariants corresponding to each of these canonical forms will be described elsewhere.

## References

1. K. Akin and D. A. Buchsbaum, *Characteristic-free representation theory of the general linear group*, Adv. in Math. **58** (1985), 149–200.
2. K. Akin, D. A. Buchsbaum, and J. Weyman, *Schur functors and Schur complexes*, Adv. in Math. **44** (1982), 207–278.
3. M. Barnabei, A. Brini, and G.-C. Rota, *On the exterior calculus of invariant theory*, J. Algebra **96** (1985), 120–160.
4. A. Berele and A. Regev, *Hook Young diagrams with applications to combinatorics and to representations of Lie superalgebras*, Adv. in Math. **64** (1987), 118–175.
5. A. Brini, A. Palareti, and A. G. B. Teolis, *Gordan-Capelli series in superalgebras* (to appear).
6. L. Brink, M. Gell-Mann, P. Ramon, and J. H. Schwartz, *Extended supergravity as geometry of superspace*, Phys. Lett. B **76** (1982), 417–422.
7. E. R. Caianiello, *Combinatorics and renormalization in quantum field theory*, Benjamin, Reading, Mass., 1973.
8. L. Corwin, Y. Ne'eman, and S. Sternberg, *Graded Lie algebras in mathematics and physics*, Rev. Modern Phys. **47** (1975), 573–603.
9. J. Désarménien, *An algorithm for the Rota straightening formula*, Discrete Math. **30** (1980), 51–68.
10. J. Désarménien, J. P. S. Kung, and G.-C. Rota, *Invariant theory, Young bitableaux and combinatorics*, Adv. in Math. **27** (1978), 63–92.
11. B. S. deWitt, *Supermanifolds*, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1984.
12. P. H. Dondi and P. D. Jarvis, *Diagram and superfield techniques in the classical superalgebras*, J. Math. Phys. **14** (1981), 547–563.
13. P. Doubilet, G.-C. Rota, and J. A. Stein, *On the foundations of combinatorial theory IX: Combinatorial methods in invariant theory*, Stud. Appl. Math. **53** (1976), 185–216.
14. M. Fiorentini, *Successioni regolari relative a ideali sizigetici*, Ann. Univ. Ferrara Sez. VII (N.S.) **26** (1980), 144–154.
15. H. Grassmann, *Gesammelte Werke* (6 vols.), Teubner, Leipzig, 1911.

16. J. H. Grace and A. Young, *The algebra of invariants*, Chelsea, New York, 1903.
17. F. Grosshans, *The invariants of unipotent radicals of parabolic subgroups*, *Invent. Math.* **73** (1983), 1–9.
18. G. B. Gurevich, *Foundations of the theory of algebraic invariants*, Noordhoff, Groningen, 1964.
19. C. M. Jessop, *A treatise on the line complex*, Chelsea, New York, 1969.
20. V. G. Kac, *Lie superalgebras*, *Adv. in Math.* **26** (1977), 8–96.
21. I. Kaplansky, *Superalgebras*, *Pacific J. Math.* **86** (1980), 93–98.
22. B. Kostant, *Graded manifolds, graded Lie theory and prequantization*, *Lecture Notes in Math.*, vol. 570, Springer-Verlag, pp. 177–306.
23. F. Kouwenhoven, *Universal operations in the representation theory of groups*, University of Utrecht, 1986.
24. J. P. S. Kung (ed.), *Young tableaux in combinatorics, invariant theory and algebra*, Academic Press, New York, 1982.
25. J. P. S. Kung and G.-C. Rota, *The invariant theory of binary forms*, *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.* **10** (1984), 27–85.
26. A. Lascoux, Thèse, Paris, 1977.
27. —, *Syzygies des variétés déterminantales*, *Adv. in Math.* **30** (1978), 202–237.
28. Y. Manin, *New dimensions in geometry*, Arbeitstagung Bonn, *Lecture Notes in Math.*, Springer-Verlag, 1984, pp. 59–101.
29. N. Metropolis, G. Nicoletti, and G.-C. Rota, *A new class of symmetric functions*, *Mathematical Analysis and its Applications, Part B, Adv. in Math. Suppl. Stud.*, vol. 7B, Academic Press, New York, 1981, pp. 563–575.
30. J. Milnor and J. C. Moore, *On the structure of Hopf algebras*, *Ann. of Math.* **81** (1965), 211–263.
31. G.-C. Rota and J. A. Stein, *Applications of Cayley algebras* (Italian Summary), *Colloquio Internazionale sulle Teorie Combinatorie*, Tomo II, *Accad. Naz. Lincei*, Rome, 1976, pp. 71–97.
32. —, *Symbolic method in invariant theory*, *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* **83** (1986), 844–847.
33. M. Scheunert, *The theory of Lie superalgebras: An introduction*, *Lecture Notes in Math.*, vol. 716, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1979.
34. J. A. Schouten, *Klassifizierung der alternierenden Grössen dritten Grades in 7 Dimensionen*, *Rend. Circ. Mat. Palermo* **55** (1931), 137–156.
35. E. Study, *Methoden zur theorie der ternären formen*, Teubner, Leipzig, 1889.
36. —, *Geometrie der Dynamen*, Teubner, Leipzig, 1903.
37. M. Sweedler, *Hopf algebras*, Benjamin, Reading, Mass., 1969.
38. R. Weitzenböck, *Invariantentheorie*, Noordhoff, Groningen, 1923.

39. —, *Neuere Arbeiten der algebraischen Invariantentheorie. Differentialinvarianten*, *Enzyklopädie der Mathematischen Wissenschaften*, III E 1, Teubner, Leipzig, 1920, pp. 1–71.
40. —, *Über eine Erweiterung des Determinantenbegriffes*, *Wiener Berichte* **27** (1913), 111–128.
41. A. Young, *The collected papers of Alfred Young*, University of Toronto Press, Toronto, 1977.

5964 081

## Index

- alphabet, 27
- belongs, 47
- biproduct, 16
- bracket monomial, 48
- bracket polynomial, 48
  
- coassociative law, 9
- content, 3
- Content, 3
- coproduct, 7
- covariant, 51
  
- decomposable tensor, 55
- display, 2
- Display, 3
- divided power, 3
- Divp( $A$ ), 5
  
- exchange lemma, 60
  
- fourfold algebra, 15
  
- Gale-Ryser matrix, 36
- Gale-Ryser pair, 37
- Grassmann condition, 62
  
- Hopf algebra, 10
  
- invariant polynomial, 43
  
- length, 2
- Length, 3
  
- Laplace pairing, 16
- letters, 15
  
- meet, 56
- monoid, 2
- multiplicity, 2
  
- natural basis, 23
  
- orthogonal group, 54
  
- parity, 4
- permanent, 21
- Pfaffian, 59
- places, 15
- polynomial function, 42
  
- rank of tensor, 57
  
- sign( $k$ ), 4
- signed set, 3
  - adjoint, 3
  - direct sum, 3
  - proper, 3
  - extended, 3
- span of tensor, 57
- stand( $w$ ), 3
- step of tensor, 55
- superalgebra, 5
- Sweedler notation, 8
- symm( $A$ ), 5
- symplectic group, 53

Tens[ $A$ ], 4

tensor

skew-symmetric, 42

symmetric, 43

umbral linear functional, 48

wedge( $A$ ), 5

word, 2

Young diagram, 26

shape, 26

standard, 27

Young tableau, 27

